The fontspec package Font selection for XHATEX and LuaLATEX

WILL ROBERTSON and KHALED HOSNY will.robertson@latex-project.org

2015/07/22 v2.4d

C	onte	ents			6.4	Priority of feature selection	15
					6.5	Different features for dif-	
1	Histo	ry	3			ferent font shapes	16
					6.6	Different features for dif-	
2	Intro	luction	3			ferent font sizes	17
	2.1	About this manual	3				
	2.2	Acknowledgements	3	7	Font i	ndependent options	18
					7.1	Colour	18
3	Packa	ge loading and options	4		7.2	Scale	19
	3.1	Maths fonts adjustments .	4		7.3	Interword space	19
	3.2	Configuration	5		7.4	Post-punctuation space	20
	3.3	Warnings	5		7.5	The hyphenation character	20
					7.6	Optical font sizes	20
I	Con	eral font selection	5				
1	Gen	ierai ioni selection	3	II	On	enType	22
4	Font s	selection	6	11	Op	cittype	
•	4.1	By font name	6	8	Introd	luction	22
	4.2	By file name	6		8.1	How to select font features	22
					C	Let . Perform of Operation	
5		commands to select font	-	9	_	lete listing of OpenType eatures	23
	famili		7		9.1		23
	5.1	More control over font	0		9.1	Ligatures	23
	5 0	shape selection	8		9.2	Letters	23
	5.2	Specifically choosing the	10		9.3	Numbers	25
	E 2	NFSS family	10		9.4	Vertical Position	25
	5.3	Choosing additional NFSS	10		9.6	Fractions	26
	E 4	font faces	10		9.6		27
	5.4	Math(s) fonts	11		9.8	Stylistic Set variations Character Variants	27
	5.5	Miscellaneous font select-	10		9.6		
		ing details	12		9.9	Alternates	28 29
6	Calasi	ling fant faakungs	12			Style	
6		ting font features	13		9.11	Diacritics	31
	6.1	Default settings	13		9.12	Kerning	31
	6.2 6.3	Default settings from a file	14		9.13	Font transformations	32
	0.3	Changing the currently se-	15		9.14	Annotation	32
		lected features	15	I	9.15	CJK shape	33

	9.16 9.17	Character width Vertical typesetting	33 34			e patching/improvem $(2_{\varepsilon}$ and other pack-	ent
	9.18	OpenType scripts and lan-		age		tag und other pack	47
		guages	34	17	Inner	emphasis	47
Ш	[Lua	aT _E X-only font fea-		18	Unico	de footnote symbols	48
	res	<u>.</u>	35	19	Verba	tim	48
10	OpenT	Type font feature files	36	20	Discre	etionary hyphenation: \-	48
IV wi	′ Foi ith X _H	nts and features TEX	38	1		nands for old-style and lin- imbers	48
11	ХаТьХ-	only font features	38			ontspec.sty and	40
	11.1	Mapping	38	fri	ends		49
	11.2	Letter spacing	39	22	'Head	er' code	49
	11.3	Different font technolo-			22.1	expl3 tools	49
		gies: AAT and OpenType .			22.2	Bits and pieces	49
	11.4	Optical font sizes	39		22.3	Error/warning/info mes-	
						sages	51
12		S X's AAT fonts	40		22.4	Option processing	54
	12.1	Ligatures			22.5	Packages	55
	12.2	Letters		23	The m	ain package code	55
	12.3 12.4	Numbers			23.1	Encodings	55
	12.4	Contextuals			23.2	User commands	56
	12.6	Vertical position Fractions			23.3	Programmer's interface	63
	12.7	Variants			23.4	expl3 interface for font	
	12.7	Alternates				loading	67
	12.9	Style			23.5	Internal macros	68
	12.10	CJK shape			23.6	keyval definitions	87
	12.11	Character width			23.7	Italic small caps	
	12.12	Vertical typesetting			23.823.9	Selecting maths fonts	
	12.13	Diacritics			23.10	Finishing up	
	12.14	Annotation	44		20.10	Companionity	110
• •				VI	II f	ontspec.lua	117
V	Prog	gramming interface	44				
13	Defini	ng new features	44	IX	for 23.11	ntspec-patches.sty Unicode footnote symbols	119 119
14	Going	behind fontspec's back	45		23.12	Emph	119
11	Joing	Delizità fontopee a back	10		23.13	\	120
15	Renam tions	ning existing features & op-	45		23.14 23.15	Verbatims	
16	6 Programming details		46	X	font	tspec.cfg	123

1 History

This package began life as a LaTeX interface to select system-installed Mac OS X fonts in Jonathan Kew's XaTeX, the first widely-used Unicode extension to TeX. Over time, XaTeX was extended to support OpenType fonts and then was ported into a cross-platform program to run also on Windows and Linux.

More recently, LuaTEX is fast becoming the TEX engine of the day; it supports Unicode encodings and OpenType fonts and opens up the internals of TEX via the Lua programming language. Hans Hagen's ConTEXt Mk. IV is a re-write of his powerful typesetting system, taking full advantage of LuaTEX's features including font support; a kernel of his work in this area has been extracted to be useful for other TEX macro systems as well, and this has enabled fontspec to be adapted for LaTEX when run with the LuaTEX engine.

2 Introduction

The fontspec package allows users of either XaTeX or LuaTeX to load OpenType fonts in a LaTeX document. No font installation is necessary, and font features can be selected and used as desired throughout the document.

Without fontspec, it is necessary to write cumbersome font definition files for LATEX, since LATEX's font selection scheme (known as the 'NFSS') has a lot going on behind the scenes to allow easy commands like \emph or \bfseries. With an uncountable number of fonts now available for use, however, it becomes less desirable to have to write these font definition (.fd) files for every font one wishes to use.

Because fontspec is designed to work in a variety of modes, this user documentation is split into separate sections that are designed to be relatively independent. Nonetheless, the basic functionality all behaves in the same way, so previous users of fontspec under X\(\textit{TEX}\) should have little or no difficulty switching over to LuaTeX.

This manual can get rather in-depth, as there are a lot of details to cover. See the example documents fontspec-xetex. tex and fontspec-luatex. tex for a complete minimal example with each engine.

2.1 About this manual

This document is typeset with pdflaTeX using pre-compiled examples that have been generated by either XeTeX or LuaTeX. You may regenerate the examples by removing the doc-files/subdirectory and typesetting the manual with the following invocation:

```
pdflatex -shell-escape fontspec.dtx
```

Note that many of the examples use fonts that are not included in TEX Live or MiKTeX, and some of them are non-free fonts that must be purchased.

I'd like to reduce the number of non-free fonts used in this manual. If you know any freely available fonts that could be used as alternative to any of the fonts in this document, please suggest them to me. Finally, if any aspect of the documentation is unclear or you would like to suggest more examples that could be made, get in touch. (Contributions especially welcome.)

2.2 Acknowledgements

This package could not have been possible without the early and continued support the author of X_HT_EX, Jonathan Kew. When I started this package, he steered me many times in the right direction.

I've had great feedback over the years on feature requests, documentation queries, bug reports, font suggestions, and so on from lots of people all around the world. Many thanks to you all.

Thanks to David Perry and Markus Böhning for numerous documentation improvements and David Perry again for contributing the text for one of the sections of this manual.

Special thanks to Khaled Hosny, who had been the driving force behind the support for LuaLTpX, ultimately leading to version 2.0 of the package.

3 Package loading and options

For basic use, no package options are required:

\usepackage{fontspec}

Package options will be introduced below; some preliminary details are discussed first:

xunicode Ross Moore's xunicode package is now automatically loaded for users of both XHATEX and LualATEX. This package provides backwards compatibility with LATEX's methods for accessing extra characters and accents (for example, \%, \\$, \textbullet, \"u, and so on), plus many more Unicode characters.

X₃TEX users only The xltxtra package adds some minor extra features to X₃ETEX, including, via the metalogo package, the \XeTeX macro to typeset the X₃TEX logo. While this package was previously recommended, it serves a much smaller rôle nowadays and generally will not be required. Please consult its documentation to assess whether its features are warranted before loading it.

LuaTeX users only In order to load fonts by their name rather than by their filename (*e.g.*, 'Latin Modern Roman' instead of 'ec-lmr10'), you may need to run the script luaotfload-tool, which is distributed with the luaotfload package. Note that if you do not execute this script beforehand, the first time you attempt to typeset the process will pause for (up to) several minutes. (But only the first time.) Please see the luaotfload documentation for more information.

babel *The babel package is not really supported!* Especially Vietnamese, Greek, and Hebrew at least might not work correctly, as far as I can tell. There's a better chance with Cyrillic and Latin-based languages, however—fontspec ensures at least that fonts should load correctly. The polyglossia package is recommended instead as a modern replacement for babel.

3.1 Maths fonts adjustments

By default, fontspec adjusts LaTeX's default maths setup in order to maintain the correct Computer Modern symbols when the roman font changes. However, it will attempt to avoid doing this if another maths font package is loaded (such as mathpazo or the unicode-math package).

If you find that fontspec is incorrectly changing the maths font when it should be leaving well enough alone, apply the <code>[no-math]</code> package option to manually suppress its maths font.

Example 1: Loading the default, sans serif, and monospaced fonts.

\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Bonum}
\setsansfont{Latin Modern Sans}[Scale=MatchLowercase]
\setmonofont{Inconsolata}[Scale=MatchLowercase]

Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs

\rmfamily Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs\par
\sffamily Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs\par
\ttfamily Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs

3.2 Configuration

If you wish to customise any part of the fontspec interface, this should be done by creating your own fontspec.cfg file, which will be automatically loaded if it is found by $X_{\overline{A}}$ or LuaTeX. A fontspec.cfg file is distributed with fontspec with a small number of defaults set up within it.

To customise fontspec to your liking, use the standard .cfg file as a starting point or write your own from scratch, then either place it in the same folder as the main document for isolated cases, or in a location that X¬TEX or LuaTEX searches by default; e.g. in MacTEX: ~/Library/texmf/texmf/tex/latex/.

The package option [no-config] will suppress the loading of the fontspec.cfg file under all circumstances.

3.3 Warnings

This package can give many warnings that can be harmless if you know what you're doing. Use the [quiet] package option to write these warnings to the transcript (.log) file instead.

Use the [silent] package option to completely suppress these warnings if you don't even want the .log file cluttered up.

Part I

General font selection

This section concerns the variety of commands that can be used to select fonts.

These are the main font-selecting commands of this package. The \fontspec command selects a font for one-time use; all others should be used to define the standard fonts used in a document, as shown in Example 1. Here, the scales of the fonts have been chosen to equalise their lowercase letter heights. The Scale font feature will be discussed further in Section 7 on page 18, including methods for automatic scaling.

The font features argument accepts comma separated $\langle font\ feature \rangle = \langle option \rangle$ lists; these are described in later:

- For general font features, see Section 7 on page 18
- For OpenType fonts, see Part II on page 22
- For X_HT_EX-only general font features, see Part IV on page 38
- For LuaT_FX-only general font features, see Part III on page 36
- For features for AAT fonts in XATEX, see Section 12 on page 40

4 Font selection

In both LuaTEX and XETEX, fonts can be selected either by 'font name' or by 'file name'.

4.1 By font name

Fonts known to LuaTeX or XaTeX may be loaded by their standard names as you'd speak them out loud, such as *Times New Roman* or *Adobe Garamond*. 'Known to' in this case generally means 'exists in a standard fonts location' such as ~/Library/Fonts on Mac OS X, or C:\Windows\Fonts on Windows.

The simplest example might be something like

```
\setmainfont{Cambria}[ ... ]
```

in which the bold and italic fonts will be found automatically (if they exist) and are immediately accessible with the usual \textit and \textbf commands.

TODO: add explanation for how to find out what the 'font name' is.

4.2 By file name

X_{\(\text{T}\)EX and LuaT_{\(\text{E}\)X also allow fonts to be loaded by file name instead of font name. When you have a very large collection of fonts, you will sometimes not wish to have them all installed in your system's font directories. In this case, it is more convenient to load them from a different location on your disk. This technique is also necessary in X_{\(\text{T}\)EX when loading OpenType fonts that are present within your T_{\(\text{E}\)X distribution, such as /usr/local/texlive/2013/texmf-dist/fonts/opentype/public. Fonts in such locations are visible to X_{\(\text{T}\)EX but cannot be loaded by font name, only file name; LuaT_{\(\text{E}\)X does not have this restriction.}}}}}}

When selecting fonts by file name, any font that can be found in the default search paths may be used directly (including in the current directory) without having to explicitly define the location of the font file on disk.

Fonts selected by filename must include bold and italic variants explicitly.

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepagella-regular.otf}[
    BoldFont = texgyrepagella-bold.otf ,
    ItalicFont = texgyrepagella-italic.otf ,
    BoldItalicFont = texgyrepagella-bolditalic.otf ]
```

fontspec knows that the font is to be selected by file name by the presence of the '.otf' extension. An alternative is to specify the extension separately, as shown following:

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepagella-regular}[
    Extension = .otf ,
    BoldFont = texgyrepagella-bold ,
    ... ]
```

If desired, an abbreviation can be applied to the font names based on the mandatory 'font name' argument:

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepagella}[
    Extension = .otf ,
    UprightFont = *-regular ,
    BoldFont = *-bold ,
```

In this case 'texgyrepagella' is no longer the name of an actual font, but is used to construct the font names for each shape; the * is replaced by 'texgyrepagella'. Note in this case that UprightFont is required for constructing the font name of the normal font to use.

To load a font that is not in one of the default search paths, its location in the filesystem must be specified with the Path feature:

Note that XaTeX and LuaTeX are able to load the font without giving an extension, but fontspec must know to search for the file; this can can be indicated by declaring the font exists in an 'ExternalLocation':

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepagella-regular}[
    ExternalLocation ,
    BoldFont = texgyrepagella-bold ,
    ... ]
```

To be honest, Path and ExternalLocation are actually the same feature with different names. The former can be given without an argument and the latter can be given with one; the different names are just for clarity.

5 New commands to select font families

For cases when a specific font with a specific feature set is going to be re-used many times in a document, it is inefficient to keep calling \fontspec for every use. While the \fontspec command does not define a new font instance after the first call, the feature options must still be parsed and processed.

\newfontfamily

For this reason, new commands can be created for loading a particular font family with the \newfontfamily command, demonstrated in Example 2. This macro should be used to create commands that would be used in the same way as \rmfamily, for example. If you would like to create a command that only changes the font inside its argument (i.e., the same behaviour as \emph) define it using regular LaTeX commands:

```
\newcommand\textnote[1]{{\notefont #1}}
\textnote{This is a note.}
```

Note that the double braces are intentional; the inner pair are used to to delimit the scope of the font change.

\newfontface

Sometimes only a specific font face is desired, without accompanying italic or bold variants being automatically selected. This is common when selecting a fancy italic font, say, that has swash features unavailable in the upright forms. \newfontface is used for this purpose, shown in Example 3, which is repeated in Section 12.4 on page 40.

Example 2: De	Example 2: Defining new font families.		
This is a <i>note</i> .	\newfontfamily\notefont{Kurier} \notefont This is a \emph{note}.		
Example 3: Defining a single font face.			
	<pre>\newfontface\fancy{Hoefler Text Italic}% [Contextuals={WordInitial,WordFinal}]</pre>		
where is all the vegemite	<pre>\fancy where is all the vegemite % \emph, \textbf, etc., all don't work</pre>		

Comment for advanced users: The commands defined by \newfontface and \newfontfamily include their encoding information, so even if the document is set to use a legacy TeX encoding, such commands will still work correctly. For example,

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{fontspec}
\newfontfamily\unicodefont{Lucida Grande}
\usepackage{mathpazo}
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\begin{document}
A legacy \TeX\ font. {\unicodefont A unicode font.}
\end{document}
```

5.1 More control over font shape selection

```
\label{eq:boldFont} \begin{split} & \operatorname{BoldFont} = \langle font \ name \rangle \\ & \operatorname{ItalicFont} = \langle font \ name \rangle \\ & \operatorname{BoldItalicFont} = \langle font \ name \rangle \\ & \operatorname{SlantedFont} = \langle font \ name \rangle \\ & \operatorname{BoldSlantedFont} = \langle font \ name \rangle \\ & \operatorname{SmallCapsFont} = \langle font \ name \rangle \end{split}
```

The automatic bold, italic, and bold italic font selections will not be adequate for the needs of every font: while some fonts mayn't even have bold or italic shapes, in which case a skilled (or lucky) designer may be able to chose well-matching accompanying shapes from a different font altogether, others can have a range of bold and italic fonts to chose among. The BoldFont and ItalicFont features are provided for these situations. If only one of these is used, the bold italic font is requested as the default from the *new* font. See Example 4.

If a bold italic shape is not defined, or you want to specify *both* custom bold and italic shapes, the BoldItalicFont feature is provided.

5.1.1 Input shorthands

For those cases that the base font name is repeated, you can replace it with an asterisk. (This has been shown previously in Section 4.2 on page 6.) For example, some space can be saved instead of writing 'Baskerville SemiBold':

\setmainfont{Baskerville}[BoldFont={* SemiBold}]

Example 4: Explicit selection of the bold font.

```
\fontspec{\telvetica Neue UltraLight}\\
Helvetica Neue UltraLight Italic
Helvetica Neue UltraLight Italic
Helvetica Neue UltraLight Italic
Helvetica Neue
{\itshape Helvetica Neue UltraLight Italic} \\
Helvetica Neue Italic
{\bfseries} Helvetica Neue } \\
{\bfseries\itshape Helvetica Neue Italic} \\
\end{array}
```

As a matter of fact, this feature can also be used for the upright font too: \setmainfont{Baskerville}[UprightFont={* SemiBold},BoldFont={* Bold}]

5.1.2 Small caps and slanted font shapes

For the rare situations where a font family will have slanted *and* italic shapes, these may be specified separately using the analogous features SlantedFont and BoldSlantedFont. Without these, however, the LaTeX font switches for slanted (\textsl, \slshape) will default to the italic shape.

Old-fashioned font families used to distribute their small caps glyphs in separate fonts due to the limitations on the number of glyphs allowed in the PostScript Type 1 format. Such fonts may be used by declaring the SmallCapsFont of the family you are specifying:

```
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[
    SmallCapsFont={Minion MM Small Caps & Oldstyle Figures}
]
Roman 123 \\ \textsc{Small caps 456}
In fact, you may specify the small caps font for each individual bold and italic shape as in
\fontspec{ <upright> }[
    UprightFeatures = { SmallCapsFont={ <sc> } } ,
    BoldFeatures = { SmallCapsFont={ <bf sc> } } ,
    ItalicFeatures = { SmallCapsFont={ <it sc> } } ,
    BoldItalicFeatures = { SmallCapsFont={ <it sc> } } ,
    BondItalicFeatures = { SmallCapsFont={ <bf it sc> } } ,
]
Roman 123 \\ \textsc{Small caps 456}
```

For most modern fonts that have small caps as a font feature, this level of control isn't generally necessary, but you may still occasionally find font families in which the small caps are in a separate font.

All of the bold, italic, and small caps fonts can be loaded with different font features from the main font. See Section 6.5 for details. When an OpenType font is selected for SmallCapsFont, the small caps font feature is *not* automatically enabled. In this case, users should write instead, if necessary,

```
\fontspec{...}[
   SmallCapsFont={...},
   SmallCapsFeatures={Letters=SmallCaps},
```

5.2 Specifically choosing the NFSS family

In LATEX's NFSS, font families are defined with names such as 'ppl' (Palatino), 'cmr' (Computer Modern Roman), and so on, which are selected with the \fontfamily command:

```
\fontfamily{ppl}\selectfont
```

In fontspec, the family names are auto-generated based on the fontname of the font; for example, writing \fontspec{Times New Roman} for the first time would generate an internal font family name of 'TimesNewRoman(1)'.

In certain cases it is desirable to be able to choose this internal font family name so it can be re-used elsewhere for interacting with other packages that use the LATEX's font selection interface; an example might be

```
\usepackage{fancyvrb}
\fvset{fontfamily=myverbatimfont}
```

To select a font for use in this way in fontspec use the NFSSFamily feature: 1

\newfontfamily\verbatimfont[NFSSFamily=myverbatimfont]{Inconsolata}

It is then possible to write commands such as:

\fontfamily{myverbatimfont}\selectfont

which is essentially the same as writing \verbatimfont, or to go back to the orginal example:

```
\fvset{fontfamily=myverbatimfont}
```

Only use this feature when necessary; the in-built font switching commands that fontspec generates (such as \verbatimfont in the example above) are recommended in all other cases.

If you don't wish to explicitly set the NFSS family but you would like to know what it is, an alternative mechanism for package writers is introduced as part of the fontspec programming interface; see the function \fontspec_set_family: Nnn for details (Section 16 on page 46).

5.3 Choosing additional NFSS font faces

LTEX's font selection scheme is more flexible than the fontspec interface discussed up until this point. It assigns to each font face a *family* (discussed above), a *series* such as bold or light or condensed, and a *shape* such as italic or slanted or small caps. The fontspec features such as BoldFont and so on all assign faces for the default series and shapes of the NFSS, but it's not uncommon to have font families that have multiple weights and shapes and so on.

If you set up a regular font family with the 'standard four' (upright, bold, italic, and bold italic) shapes and then want to use, say, a light font for a certain document element, many users will be perfectly happy to use \newfontface\\switch\\ and use the resulting font \\switch\\. In other cases, however, it is more convenient or even necessary to load additional fonts using additional NFSS specifiers.

The font thus specified will inherit the font features of the main font, with optional addition $\langle features \rangle$ as requested. (Note that the optional $\{\langle features \rangle\}$ argument is still surrounded with curly braces.) Multiple FontFace commands may be used in a single declaration to specify multiple fonts. As an example:

¹Thanks to Luca Fascione for the example and motivation for finally implementing this feature.

```
\setmainfont{font1.otf}[
  FontFace = {c}{n}{ font2.otf } ,
  FontFace = {c}{m}{ Font = font3.otf , Color = red }
]
```

Writing \fontseries{c}\selectfont will result in font2 being selected, which then followed by \fontshape{m}\selectfont will result in font3 being selected (in red). A font face that is defined in terms of a different series but a normal shape will attempt to find a matching small caps feature and define that face as well if appropriate. Conversely, a font faced defined in terms of a different font will not.

There are some standards for choosing shape and series codes; the LaTeX 2_{ϵ} font selection guide² lists series m for medium, b for bold, bx for bold extended, sb for semi-bold, and c for condensed. A far more comprehensive listing is included in Appendix A of Philipp Lehman's 'The Font Installation Guide'³ covering 14 separate weights and 12 separate widths

The FontFace command also interacts properly with the SizeFeatures command as follows: (nonsense set of font selection choices)

Note that if the first Font feature is omitted then each size needs its own inner Font declaration.

5.4 Math(s) fonts

When \setmainfont, \setsansfont and \setmonofont are used in the preamble, they also define the fonts to be used in maths mode inside the \mathrm-type commands. This only occurs in the preamble because LaTeX freezes the maths fonts after this stage of the processing. The fontspec package must also be loaded after any maths font packages (e.g., euler) to be successful. (Actually, it is *only* euler that is the problem.⁴)

Note that fontspec will not change the font for general mathematics; only the upright and bold shapes will be affected. To change the font used for the mathematical symbols, see either the mathspec package or the unicode-math package.

Note that you may find that loading some maths packages won't be as smooth as you expect since fontspec (and X_TT_EX in general) breaks many of the assumptions of T_EX as to where maths characters and accents can be found. Contact me if you have troubles, but I can't guarantee to be able to fix any incompatibilities. The Lucida and Euler maths fonts should be fine; for all others keep an eye out for problems.

```
\label{eq:continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous
```

²texdoc fntguide

³texdoc fontinstallationguide

 $^{^4}$ Speaking of euler, if you want to use its [mathbf] option, it won't work, and you'll need to put this after fontspec is loaded instead: $\added = \frac{1}{b}{n}$

However, the default text fonts may not necessarily be the ones you wish to use when typesetting maths (especially with the use of fancy ligatures and so on). For this reason, you may optionally use the commands above (in the same way as our other \fontspeclike commands) to explicitly state which fonts to use inside such commands as \mathrm. Additionally, the \setboldmathrm command allows you define the font used for \mathrm when in bold maths mode (which is activated with, among others, \boldmath).

For example, if you were using Optima with the Euler maths font, you might have this in your preamble:

```
\usepackage{mathpazo}
\usepackage{fontspec,xunicode}
\setmainfont{Optima}
\setmathrm{Optima}
\setboldmathrm[BoldFont={Optima ExtraBlack}]{Optima Bold}
```

5.5 Miscellaneous font selecting details

The optional argument — from v2.4 For the first decade of fontspec's life, optional font features were selected with a bracketed argument before the font name, as in:

```
\setmainfont[
  lots and lots ,
  and more and more ,
  an excessive number really ,
  of font features could go here
]{myfont.otf}
```

This always looked like ugly syntax to me, and the order of these arguments has now been reversed:

```
\setmainfont{myfont.otf}[
  lots and lots ,
  and more and more ,
  an excessive number really ,
  of font features could go here
]
```

I hope this doesn't cause any problems.

1. Backwards compatibility has been preserved. (In fact, you could even write

```
\verb|\fontspec[Ligatures=Rare]{myfont.otf}[Color=red]|
```

if you really felt like it and both sets of features would be applied.)

2. Following standard xparse behaviour, there must be no space before the opening bracket; writing

```
\fontspec{myfont.otf}_[Color=red]
```

will result in [Color=red] not being recognised an argument and therefore it will be typeset as text. When breaking over lines, write either of:

```
\fontspec{myfont.otf}% \fontspec{myfont.otf}[
[Color=red] Color=Red]
```

Spaces \fontspec and \addfontfeatures ignore trailing spaces as if it were a 'naked' control sequence; e.g., 'M. \fontspec{...} N' and 'M. \fontspec{...}N' are the same.

Example 5: A demonstration of the \defaultfontfeatures command.

```
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}
Some default text 0123456789 \\
\defaultfontfeatures{
    Numbers=OldStyle, Color=888888
}
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}
Now grey, with old-style figures:
0123456789
```

Some default text 0123456789

Now grey, with old-style figures: 0123456789

Italic small caps Note that this package redefines the \itshape and \scshape commands in order to allow them to select italic small caps in conjunction.

Emphasis and nested emphasis You may specify the behaviour of the \emph command by setting the \emph command. *E.g.*, for bold emphasis:

\renewcommand\emshape{\bfseries}

Nested emphasis is controlled by the $\ensuremath{\verb|eminnershape|}$ to produce small caps:

\renewcommand\eminnershape{\scshape}

This functionality is provided with the same interface as the fixltx2e package, with a slightly different internal implementation.

6 Selecting font features

The commands discussed so far such as \fontspec each take an optional argument for accessing the font features of the requested font. Commands are provided to set default features to be applied for all fonts, and even to change the features that a font is presently loaded with. Different font shapes can be loaded with separate features, and different features can even be selected for different sizes that the font appears in. This section discusses these options.

6.1 Default settings

```
\defaultfontfeatures(\langle font features \rangle)
```

It is sometimes useful to define font features that are applied to every subsequent font selection command. This may be defined with the \defaultfontfeatures command, shown in Example 5. New calls of \defaultfontfeatures overwrite previous ones, and defaults can be reset by calling the command with an empty argument.

```
\defaultfontfeatures[\langle font name \rangle] \{\langle font features \rangle \}
```

Default font features can be specified on a per-font and per-face basis by using the optional argument to \defaultfontfeatures as shown.⁵

```
\defaultfontfeatures[TeX Gyre Adventor]{Color=blue}
\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Adventor}% will be blue
```

 $^{^5 \}text{Internally, } \langle \textit{font name} \rangle$ has all spaces removed and is converted to lowercase.

Multiple fonts may be affected by using a comma separated list of font names.

```
\defaultfontfeatures[\\font-switch\]{\langle font features\}
```

New in v2.4. Defaults can also be applied to symbolic families such as those created with the \newfontfamily command and for \rmfamily, \sffamily, and \ttfamily:

```
\defaultfontfeatures[\rmfamily,\sffamily]{Ligatures=TeX}
\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Adventor}% will use standard TeX ligatures
```

The line above to set TEX-like ligatures is now activated by *default* in fontspec.cfg. To reset default font features, simply call the command with an empty argument:

```
\label{lem:defaultfontfeatures+} $$ \defaultfontfeatures+{\langle font\ features\rangle} $$ \defaultfontfeatures+{\langle font\ name\rangle} {\langle font\ features\rangle} $$
```

New in v2.4. Using the + form of the command appends the $\langle font \, features \rangle$ to any already-selected defaults.

6.2 Default settings from a file

In addition to the defaults that may be specified in the document as described above, when a font is first loaded, a configuration file is searched for with the name ' $\langle fontname \rangle$ '. Fontspec'.

The contents of this file can be used to specify default font features without having to have this information present within each document. $\langle fontname \rangle$ is stripped of spaces and file extensions are omitted; for example, the line above for TeX Gyre Adventor could be placed in a file called TeXGyreAdventor.fontspec, or for specifying options for texgyreadventor-regular.otf (when loading by filename), the configuration file would be texgyreadventor-regular.fontspec. (N.B. the lettercase of the names should match.)

This mechanism can be used to define custom names or aliases for your font collections. If you create a file MyCharis. fontspec containing, say,

```
\defaultfontfeatures[My Charis]
{
   Extension = .ttf ,
   UprightFont = CharisSILR,
   BoldFont = CharisSILB,
   ItalicFont = CharisSILI,
   BoldItalicFont = CharisSILBI,
   % <any other desired options>
}
```

you can load that custom family with \fontspec{My Charis} and similar. The optional argument to \defaultfontfeatures must match that requested by the font loading command (\fontspec, etc.), else the options won't take effect.

Finally, note that options for font faces can also be defined in this way. To continue the example above, here we colour the different faces:

```
\defaultfontfeatures[CharisSILR]{Color=blue}
\defaultfontfeatures[CharisSILB]{Color=red}
```

And such configuration lines can be stored either inline inside My Charis.fontspec or within their own .fontspec files; in this way, fontspec is designed to handle 'nested' configuration options as well.

⁶Located in the current folder or within a standard texmf location.

Example 6: A demonstration of the \addfontfeatures command. Note the caveat listed in the text regarding such usage.

'In 1842, 999 people sailed 97 miles in 13 boats. In 1923, 111 people sailed 54 miles in 56 boats.'

 Year
 People
 Miles
 Boats

 1842
 999
 75
 13

 1923
 111
 54
 56

{\addfontfeatures{Numbers={Monospaced,Lining}}

6.3 Changing the currently selected features

```
\addfontfeatures(\langle font features \rangle)
```

This command allows font features to be changed without knowing what features are currently selected or even what font is being used. A good example of this could be to add a hook to all tabular material to use monospaced numbers, as shown in Example 6. Note however that the behaviour in this regard will be unreliable (subject to the font itself) if you attempt to *change* an already selected feature. *E.g.*, this sort of thing can cause troubles:

```
\addfontfeature{Numbers=OldStyle}...\addfontfeature{Numbers=Lining}...
123
```

With both features active, how will the font render '123'? Depends on the font. In the distant future this functionality will be re-written to avoid this issue (giving 'Numbers=OldStyle' the smarts to know to explicitly de-activate any previous instances of 'Numbers=Lining', and vice-versa, but as I hope you can imagine this requires a fair degree of elbow grease which I haven't had available for some time now.

\addfontfeature

This command may also be executed under the alias \addfontfeature.

6.4 Priority of feature selection

Features defined with \addfontfeatures override features specified by \fontspec, which in turn override features specified by \defaultfontfeatures. If in doubt, whenever a new font is chosen for the first time, an entry is made in the transcript (.log) file displaying the font name and the features requested.

Example 7: Features for, say, just italics.

Attention All Martini Drinkers
Attention All Martini Drinkers

```
\fontspec{Hoefler Text} \itshape \scshape
Attention All Martini Drinkers \\
\addfontfeature{ItalicFeatures={Alternate = 1}}
Attention All Martini Drinkers \\
```

Example 8: An example of setting the SmallCapsFeatures separately for each font shape.

```
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Termes}[
                                        UprightFeatures={Color = 220022,
                                             SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=115511}},
                                        ItalicFeatures={Color = 2244FF,
                                             SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=112299}},
                                           BoldFeatures={Color = FF4422,
                                             SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=992211}},
                                    BoldItalicFeatures={Color = 888844,
                                             SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=444422}},
Upright SMALL CAPS
                                   Upright {\scshape Small Caps}\\
Italic Italic Small Caps
                                   \itshape Italic {\scshape Italic Small Caps}\\
Bold Bold Small Caps
                                    \upshape\bfseries Bold {\scshape Bold Small Caps}\\
Bold Italic Bold Italic Small Caps
                                   \itshape Bold Italic {\scshape Bold Italic Small Caps}
```

6.5 Different features for different font shapes

```
BoldFeatures=\{\langle features \rangle\}

ItalicFeatures=\{\langle features \rangle\}

BoldItalicFeatures=\{\langle features \rangle\}

SlantedFeatures=\{\langle features \rangle\}

BoldSlantedFeatures=\{\langle features \rangle\}

SmallCapsFeatures=\{\langle features \rangle\}
```

It is entirely possible that separate fonts in a family will require separate options; *e.g.*, Hoefler Text Italic contains various swash feature options that are completely unavailable in the upright shapes.

The font features defined at the top level of the optional \fontspec argument are applied to *all* shapes of the family. Using Upright-, SmallCaps-, Bold-, Italic-, and BoldItalicFeatures, separate font features may be defined to their respective shapes *in addition* to, and with precedence over, the 'global' font features. See Example 7.

Note that because most fonts include their small caps glyphs within the main font, features specified with SmallCapsFeatures are applied *in addition* to any other shape-specific features as defined above, and hence SmallCapsFeatures can be nested within ItalicFeatures and friends. Every combination of upright, italic, bold and small caps can thus be assigned individual features, as shown in the somewhat ludicrous Example 8.

Example 9: An example of specifying different font features for different sizes of font with SizeFeatures.

Table 1: Syntax for specifying the size to apply custom font features.

Input	Font size, s
Size = X-	$s \geqslant X$
Size = -Y	s < Y
Size = X-Y	$X \leqslant s < Y$
Size = X	s = X

6.6 Different features for different font sizes

```
SizeFeatures = {
    ...
    { Size = \langle size range \rangle, \langle font features \rangle },
    { Size = \langle size range \rangle, Font = \langle font name \rangle, \langle font features \rangle },
    ...
}
```

The SizeFeature feature is a little more complicated than the previous features discussed. It allows different fonts and different font features to be selected for a given font family as the point size varies.

It takes a comma separated list of braced, comma separated lists of features for each size range. Each sub-list must contain the Size option to declare the size range, and optionally Font to change the font based on size. Other (regular) fontspec features that are added are used on top of the font features that would be used anyway. A demonstration to clarify these details is shown in Example 9. A less trivial example is shown in the context of optical font sizes in Section 7.6 on page 20.

To be precise, the Size sub-feature accepts arguments in the form shown in Table 1. Braces around the size range are optional. For an exact font size (Size=X) font sizes chosen near that size will 'snap'. For example, for size definitions at exactly 11pt and 14pt, if a 12pt font is requested *actually* the 11pt font will be selected. This is a remnant of the past when fonts were designed in metal (at obviously rigid sizes) and later when bitmap fonts were similarly designed for fixed sizes.

If additional features are only required for a single size, the other sizes must still be specified. As in:

```
SizeFeatures={
    {Size=-10,Numbers=Uppercase},
    {Size=10-}}
```

Otherwise, the font sizes greater than 10 won't be defined at all!

Example 10: Selecting colour with transparency. N.B. due to a conflict betweeen fontspec and the preview package, this example currently does not show any transparency!



```
\fontsize{48}{48}
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Bonum Bold}
{\addfontfeature{Color=FF000099}W}\kern-0.5ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=0000FF99}S}\kern-0.4ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=DDBB2299}P}\kern-0.4ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=00BB3399}R}
```

Interaction with other features For SizeFeatures to work with ItalicFeatures, BoldFeatures, etc., and SmallCapsFeatures, a strict heirarchy is required:

```
UprightFeatures =
{
    SizeFeatures =
    {
        Size = -10,
        Font = ..., % if necessary
        SmallCapsFeatures = {...},
        ... % other features for this size range
    },
        ... % other size ranges
}
```

Suggestions on simplifying this interface welcome.

7 Font independent options

Features introduced in this section may be used with any font.

7.1 Colour

Color (or Colour), also shown in Section 6.1 on page 13 and elsewhere, uses font specifications to set the colour of the text. The colour is defined as a triplet of two-digit Hex RGB values, with optionally another value for the transparency (where 00 is completely transparent and FF is opaque.) Transparency is supported by Lual*TeX; XqL*TeX with the xdvipdfmx driver does not support this feature.

If you load the xcolor package, you may use any named colour instead of writing the colours in hexadecimal.

```
\usepackage{xcolor}
...
\fontspec[Color=red]{Verdana} ...
\definecolor{Foo}{rgb}{0.3,0.4,0.5}
\fontspec[Color=Foo]{Verdana} ...
```

The color package is *not* supported; use xcolor instead.

You may specify the transparency with a named colour using the Opacity feature which takes an decimal from zero to one corresponding to transparent to opaque respectively:

Example 11: Automatically calculated scale values.

\setmainfont{Georgia}
\newfontfamily\lc[Scale=MatchLowercase]{Verdana}
The perfect match {\lc is hard to find.}\\
\newfontfamily\uc[Scale=MatchUppercase]{Arial}
L O G O \uc F O N T

The perfect match is hard to find. L O G O F O N T

```
\fontspec[Color=red,Opacity=0.7]{Verdana} ...
```

It is still possible to specify a colour in six-char hexadecimal form while defining opacity in this way, if you like.

7.2 Scale

```
Scale = \langle number \rangle
Scale = MatchLowercase
Scale = MatchUppercase
```

In its explicit form, Scale takes a single numeric argument for linearly scaling the font, as demonstrated in Example 1. It is now possible to measure the correct dimensions of the fonts loaded and calculate values to scale them automatically.

As well as a numerical argument, the Scale feature also accepts options MatchLowercase and MatchUppercase, which will scale the font being selected to match the current default roman font to either the height of the lowercase or uppercase letters, respectively; these features are shown in Example 11.

The amount of scaling used in each instance is reported in the .log file. Since there is some subjectivity about the exact scaling to be used, these values should be used to fine-tune the results.

Note that when Scale=MatchLowercase is used with \setmainfont, the new 'main' font of the document will be scaled to match the old default. This may be undesirable in some cases, so to achieve 'natural' scaling for the main font but automatically scale all other fonts selected, you may write

```
\defaultfontfeatures{ Scale = MatchLowercase }
\defaultfontfeatures[\rmfamily]{ Scale = 1}
```

One or both of these lines may be placed into a local fontspec.cfg file (see Section 3.2 on page 5) for this behaviour to be effected in your own documents automatically. (Also see Section 6.1 on page 13 for more information on setting font defaults.)

7.3 Interword space

While the space between words can be varied on an individual basis with the TeX primitive \spaceskip command, it is more convenient to specify this information when the font is first defined.

The space in between words in a paragraph will be chosen automatically, and generally will not need to be adjusted. For those times when the precise details are important, the WordSpace feature is provided, which takes either a single scaling factor to scale the default value, or a triplet of comma-separated values to scale the nominal value, the stretch, and the shrink of the interword space by, respectively. (WordSpace= $\{x\}$ is the same as WordSpace= $\{x,x,x\}$.)

Example 12: Scaling the default interword space. An exaggerated value has been chosen to emphasise the effects here.

\fontspec{TeX Gyre Termes}
Some text for our example to take
up some space, and to demonstrate
the default interword space.
\bigskip

Some text for our example to take up some space, and to demonstrate the default interword space.

Some text for our example to take up some space, and to demonstrate the default interword space.

\addfontfeature{ WordSpace = 0.3 } Some text for our example to take up some space, and to demonstrate the default interword space.

Example 13: Scaling the default post-punctuation space.

\nonfrenchspacing
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Schola}
Letters, Words. Sentences.
\nonfrenchspacing
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Schola}[PunctuationSpace=2]
\Letters, Words. Sentences.
\par
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Schola}[PunctuationSpace=0]
\Letters, Words. Sentences.

7.4 Post-punctuation space

If \frenchspacing is *not* in effect, TEX will allow extra space after some punctuation in its goal of justifying the lines of text. Generally, this is considered old-fashioned, but occasionally in small amounts the effect can be justified, pardon the pun.

The PunctuationSpace feature takes a scaling factor by which to adjust the nominal value chosen for the font; this is demonstrated in Example 13. Note that PunctuationSpace=0 is *not* equivalent to \frenchspacing, although the difference will only be apparent when a line of text is under-full.

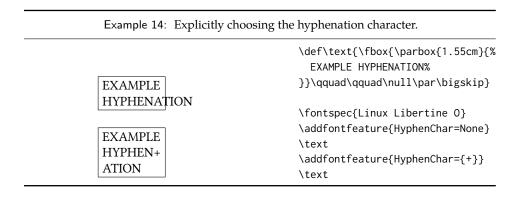
7.5 The hyphenation character

The letter used for hyphenation may be chosen with the HyphenChar feature. It takes three types of input, which are chosen according to some simple rules. If the input is the string None, then hyphenation is suppressed for this font. If the input is a single character, then this character is used. Finally, if the input is longer than a single character it must be the UTF-8 slot number of the hyphen character you desire.

This package redefines LATEX's \- macro such that it adjusts along with the above changes.

7.6 Optical font sizes

Optically scaled fonts thicken out as the font size decreases in order to make the glyph shapes more robust (less prone to losing detail), which improves legibility. Conversely, at large optical sizes the serifs and other small details may be more delicately rendered.



Example 15: A demonstration of automatic optical size selection.

```
\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman}
Automatic optical size \\Automatic optical size
Automatic optical size
Automatic optical size
Automatic optical size
\frac{\delta in Modern Roman}}{Automatic optical size} \\
Automatic optical size}
```

OpenType fonts with optical scaling will exist in several discrete sizes, and these will be selected by $X_{\overline{1}}T_{E}X$ and LuaT_EX *automatically* determined by the current font size as in Example 15, in which we've scaled down some large text in order to be able to compare the difference for equivalent font sizes.

The OpticalSize option may be used to specify a different optical size. With OpticalSize set to zero, no optical size font substitution is performed, as shown in Example 16.

The SizeFeatures feature (Section 6.6 on page 17) can be used to specify exactly which optical sizes will be used for ranges of font size. For example, something like:

Example 16: Optical size substitution is suppressed when set to zero.

```
\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman 5 Regular}[OpticalSize=0]
Latin Modern optical sizes \\
Latin Modern optical sizes
```

Part II

OpenType

8 Introduction

OpenType fonts (and other 'smart' font technologies such as AAT and Graphite) can change the appearance of text in many different ways. These changes are referred to as features. When the user applies a feature — for example, small capitals — to a run of text, the code inside the font makes appropriate adjustments and small capitals appear in place of lowercase letters. However, the use of such features does not affect the underlying text. In our small caps example, the lowercase letters are still stored in the document; only the appearance has been changed by the OpenType feature. This makes it possible to search and copy text without difficulty. If the user selected a different font that does not support small caps, the 'plain' lowercase letters would appear instead.

Some OpenType features are required to support particular scripts, and these features are often applied automatically. The scripts used in India, for example, often require that characters be reshaped and reordered after they are typed by the user, in order to display them in the traditional ways that readers expect. Other features can be applied to support a particular language. The Junicode font for medievalists uses by default the Old English shape of the letter thorn, while in modern Icelandic thorn has a more rounded shape. If a user tags some text as being in Icelandic, Junicode will automatically change to the Icelandic shape through an OpenType feature that localizes the shapes of letters.

A very large group of OpenType features is designed to support high quality typography in Latin, Greek, Cyrillic and other standard scripts. Examples of some font features have already been shown in previous sections; the complete set of OpenType font features supported by fontspec is described below in Section 9.

The OpenType specification provides four-letter codes (e.g., smcp for small capitals) for each feature. The four-letter codes are given below along with the fontspec names for various features, for the benefit of people who are already familiar with OpenType. You can ignore the codes if they don't mean anything to you.

8.1 How to select font features

Font features are selected by a series of $\langle feature \rangle = \langle option \rangle$ selections. Features are (usually) grouped logically; for example, all font features relating to ligatures are accessed by writing Ligatures={...} with the appropriate argument(s), which could be TeX, Rare, etc., as shown below in Section 9.1.

Multiple options may be given to any feature that accepts non-numerical input, although doing so will not always work. Some options will override others in generally obvious ways; Numbers={OldStyle,Lining} doesn't make much sense because the two options are mutually exclusive, and XaTeX will simply use the last option that is specified (in this case using Lining over OldStyle).

If a feature or an option is requested that the font does not have, a warning is given in the console output. As mentioned in Section 3.3 on page 5 these warnings can be suppressed by selecting the [quiet] package option.

Table 2: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Ligatures'.

Feature	Option		Tag
Ligatures =	Required NoRequired Common NoCommon Contextual NoContextual Rare/Discretionary Historic TeX	*	rlig rlig (deactivate) liga liga (deactivate) clig clig (deactivate) dlig hlig tlig/trep

^{*} This feature is activated by default.

Example 17: An example of the Ligatures feature.

 $strict \rightarrow strict$ $wurtzite \rightarrow wurtzite$ $firefly \rightarrow firefly$

\def\test#1#2{%
 #2 \$\to\$ {\addfontfeature{#1} #2}\\}
\fontspec{Linux Libertine 0}
\test{Ligatures=Historic}{strict}
\test{Ligatures=Rare}{wurtzite}
\test{Ligatures=NoCommon}{firefly}

9 Complete listing of OpenType font features

9.1 Ligatures

Ligatures refer to the replacement of two separate characters with a specially drawn glyph for functional or æsthetic reasons. The list of options, of which multiple may be selected at one time, is shown in Table 2. A demonstration with the Linux Libertine fonts⁷ is shown in Example 17.

Note the additional features accessed with Ligatures=TeX. These are not actually real OpenType features, but additions provided by luaotfload (i.e., LuaTeX only) to emulate TeX's behaviour for ASCII input of curly quotes and punctuation. In XeTeX this is achieved with the Mapping feature (see Section 11.1 on page 38) but for consistency Ligatures=TeX will perform the same function as Mapping=tex-text.

9.2 Letters

The Letters feature specifies how the letters in the current font will look. OpenType fonts may contain the following options: Uppercase, SmallCaps, PetiteCaps, UppercaseSmallCaps, UppercasePetiteCaps, and Unicase.

Petite caps are smaller than small caps. SmallCaps and PetiteCaps turn lowercase letters into the smaller caps letters, whereas the Uppercase... options turn the *capital* letters into

⁷http://www.linuxlibertine.org/

Table 3: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Letters'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Teature	Option	Tag
Letters =	Uppercase	case
	SmallCaps	smcp
	PetiteCaps	рсар
	UppercaseSmallCaps	c2sc
	Upper case Petite Caps	c2pc
	Unicase	unic

Example 18: Small caps from lowercase or uppercase letters.

\fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}[Letters=SmallCaps]
THIS SENTENCE no verb \\
THIS SENTENCE NO VERB \fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}[Letters=UppercaseSmallCaps]
THIS SENTENCE no verb

the smaller caps (good, *e.g.*, for applying to already uppercase acronyms like 'NASA'). This difference is shown in Example 18. 'Unicase' is a weird hybrid of upper and lower case letters.

Note that the Uppercase option will (probably) not actually map letters to uppercase.⁸ It is designed to select various uppercase forms for glyphs such as accents and dashes, such as shown in Example 19; note the raised position of the hyphen to better match the surrounding letters.

The Kerning feature also contains an Uppercase option, which adds a small amount of spacing in between letters (see Section 9.12 on page 31).

9.3 Numbers

The Numbers feature defines how numbers will look in the selected font, accepting options shown in Table 4.

The synonyms Uppercase and Lowercase are equivalent to Lining and OldStyle, respectively. The differences have been shown previously in Section 6.3 on page 15. The Monospaced option is useful for tabular material when digits need to be vertically aligned.

The SlashedZero option replaces the default zero with a slashed version to prevent confusion with an uppercase 'O', shown in Example 20.

Example 19: An example of the Uppercase option of the Letters feature.

\[\fontspec{\text{Linux Libertine 0}} \]

\[\text{UPPER-CASE example \\ addfontfeature{\text{Letters=Uppercase}}} \]

\[\text{UPPER-CASE example \\ uPPER-CASE example} \]

⁸If you want automatic uppercase letters, look to LATEX's \MakeUppercase command.

Table 4: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Numbers'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Numbers =	Uppercase/Lining	lnum
	Lowercase/OldStyle	onum
	Proportional	pnum
	Monospaced	tnum
	SlashedZero	zero
	Arabic	anum

Example 20: The effect of the SlashedZero option.			
	\fontspec[Numbers=Lining]{TeX Gyre Bonum} 0123456789		
0123456789 0123456789	\fontspec[Numbers=SlashedZero]{TeX Gyre Bonum}		

The Arabic option (with tag anum) maps regular numerals to their Arabic script or Persian equivalents based on the current Language setting (see Section 9.18 on page 34), shown in Example 21 using the Persian Modern font, which is included in TEX Live and MiKTEX. This option is based on a LuaTEX feature of the luaotfload package, not an OpenType feature. (Thus, this feature is unavailable in XETEX.)

9.4 Contextuals

This feature refers to substitutions of glyphs that vary 'contextually' by their relative position in a word or string of characters; features such as contextual swashes are accessed via the options shown in Table 5.

Historic forms are accessed in OpenType fonts via the feature Style=Historic; this is generally *not* contextual in OpenType, which is why it is not included in this feature.

9.5 Vertical Position

The VerticalPosition feature is used to access things like subscript (Inferior) and superscript (Superior) numbers and letters (and a small amount of punctuation, sometimes). The Ordinal option will only raise characters that are used in some languages directly after a number. The ScientificInferior feature will move glyphs further below the baseline than

Table 5: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Contextuals'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Contextuals =		cswh calt
	Alternate WordInitial	00.20
	WordFinal	
	LineFinal	falt
	Inner	medi

Table 6: Options for the OpenType font feature 'VerticalPosition'.

Feature	Option	Tag
VerticalPosition =	Superior	sups
	Inferior	subs
	Numerator	numr
	Denominator	dnom
	Scientific Inferior	sinf
	Ordinal	ordn

the Inferior feature. These are shown in Example 22

Numerator and Denominator should only be used for creating arbitrary fractions (see next section).

The realscripts package (which is also loaded by xltxtra for XHTEX) redefines the \textsubscript and \textsuperscript commands to use the above font features automatically, including for use in footnote labels. If this is the only feature of xltxtra you wish to use, consider loading realscripts on its own instead.

9.6 Fractions

Numerator: 12345

For OpenType fonts use a regular text slash to create fractions, but the Fraction feature must be explicitly activated. Some (Asian fonts predominantly) also provide for the Alternate feature. These are both shown in Example 23.

Example 22: The Vertical Position feature. \fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=Superior] Superior: 1234567890 \fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=Numerator] Numerator: 12345 Superior: 1234567890 \fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=Denominator] Denominator: 12345 Denominator: 12345 \fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=ScientificInferior] Scientific Inferior: 12345 Scientific Inferior: 12345

Table 7: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Fractions'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Fractions =	On	frac
	Alternate	afrc

Example 23: The Fractions feature.

1/2 1/4 5/6 13579/24680 ½ ¼ % 13579/24680 ½ ¼ 5/6 13579/24680 \fontspec{Hiragino Maru Gothic Pro W4}
1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \\
\addfontfeature{Fractions=On}
1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \\
\addfontfeature{Fractions=Alternate}
1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \\

9.7 Stylistic Set variations

This feature selects a 'Stylistic Set' variation, which usually corresponds to an alternate glyph style for a range of characters (usually an alphabet or subset thereof). This feature is specified numerically. These correspond to OpenType features ss01, ss02, etc.

Two demonstrations from the Junicode font⁹ are shown in Example 24 and Example 25; thanks to Adam Buchbinder for the suggestion.

Multiple stylistic sets may be selected simultaneously by writing, e.g., StylisticSet={1,2,3}.

The StylisticSet feature is a synonym of the Variant feature for AAT fonts. See Section 13 on page 44 for a way to assign names to stylistic sets, which should be done on a per-font basis.

9.8 Character Variants

Similar to the 'Stylistic Sets' above, 'Character Variations' are selected numerically to adjust the output of (usually) a single character for the particular font. These correspond to the OpenType features cv01 to cv99.

For each character that can be varied, it is possible to select among possible options for that particular glyph. For example, in Example 26 a variety of glyphs for the character 'v' are selected, in which 5 corresponds to the character 'v' for this font feature, and the trailing : $\langle n \rangle$ corresponds to which variety to choose. Georg Duffner's open source Garamond revival

Example 24: Insular letterforms, as used in medieval Northern Europe, for the Junicode font accessed with the StylisticSet feature.

	\fontspec{Junicode}
Insular forms.	<pre>Insular forms. \\</pre>
Inrulan ropmr.	\addfontfeature{StylisticSet=2}
	<pre>Insular forms. \\</pre>

⁹http://junicode.sf.net

Example 25: Enlarged minuscules (capital letters remain unchanged) for the Junicode font, accessed with the StylisticSet feature.

Example 26: The CharacterVariant feature showing off Georg Duffner's open source Garamond revival font.

```
very
very

very

very

\text{fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}} \text{very \\
\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5] \text{very \\}
\text{fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:0] \text{very \\}
\text{fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:1] \text{very \\}
\text{fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:2] \text{very \\}
\text{fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:3] \text{very \\}
\text{fontspec{EB Gara
```

font¹⁰ is used in this example. Character variants are specifically designed not to conflict with each other, so you can enable them individually per character as shown in Example 27. (Unlike stylistic alternates, say.)

Note that the indexing starts from zero.

9.9 Alternates

The Alternate feature (for the raw OpenType feature salt) is used to access alternate font glyphs when variations exist in the font, such as in Example 28. It uses a numerical selection,

Example 27: The CharacterVariant feature selecting multiple variants simultaneously.

 $^{^{10}}$ http://www.georgduffner.at/ebgaramond/

Example 28: The Alternate feature.		
А& h А& ђ	<pre>\fontspec{Linux Libertine 0} \textsc{a} \& h \\ \addfontfeature{Alternate=0} \textsc{a} \& h</pre>	

Table 8: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Style'.

Feature Option	Tag
Style = Alternate	salt
Italic	ital
Ruby	ruby
Swash	swsh
Historic	hist
TitlingCaps	titl
HorizontalKana	hkna
VerticalKana	vkna

starting from zero, that will be different for each font. Note that the Style=Alternate option is equivalent to Alternate=0 to access the default case.

Note that the indexing starts from zero.

See Section 13 on page 44 for a way to assign names to alternates, which must be done on a per-font basis.

9.10 Style

'Ruby' refers to a small optical size, used in Japanese typography for annotations. For fonts with multiple salt OpenType features, use the fontspec Alternate feature instead.

Example 29 and Example 30 both contain glyph substitutions with similar characteristics. Note the occasional inconsistency with which font features are labelled; a long-tailed 'Q' could turn up anywhere!

In other features, larger breadths of changes can be seen, covering the style of an entire alphabet. See Example 31 and Example 32; in the latter, the Italic option affects the Latin text and the Ruby option the Japanese.

Note the difference here between the default and the horizontal style kana in Example 33: the horizontal style is slightly wider.

Example 29: Example of the Alternate option of the Style feature.			
M Q W M Q W	Quattro M Q W S M Q W	11	

Example 30: Example of the Historic option of the Style feature.				
	Adobe Jenson Pro	}		
MQZ	M Q Z	\\		
MQZ	Style=Histori			
	M O Z			

Example 31: Example of the TitlingCaps option of the Style feature.			
	\fontspec{Adobe Garamond Pro}		
TITLING CAPS	TITLING CAPS	\\	
	\addfontfeature{Style=TitlingCaps}		
TITLING CAPS	TITLING CAPS		

Example 32: Example of the Italic and Ruby options of the Style feature.

```
\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}
Latin ようこそ ワカヨタレソ Latin \kana \\
Latin ようこそ ワカヨタレソ Latin \kana \\
Latin \kana
```

Example 33: Example of the Horizontal Kana and Vertical Kana options of the Style feature.

Table 9: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Diacritics'.

Feature	Option		Tag	
Diacritics =	MarkToBase	*	mark	
	NoMarkToBase		${\tt mark}$	(deactivate)
	MarkToMark	*	mkmk	
	No Mark To Mark		mkmk	(deactivate)
	AboveBase	*	abvm	
	NoAboveBase		abvm	(deactivate)
	BelowBase	*	blwm	
	NoBelowBase		blwm	(deactivate)

^{*} This feature is activated by default.

Table 10: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Kerning'.

Feature	Option	Tag	
Kerning = Uppercase On Off		* kern	(deactivate)

^{*} This feature is activated by default.

9.11 Diacritics

Specifies how combining diacritics should be placed. These will usually be controlled automatically according to the Script setting.

9.12 Kerning

Specifies how inter-glyph spacing should behave. Well-made fonts include information for how differing amounts of space should be inserted between separate character pairs. This kerning space is inserted automatically but in rare circumstances you may wish to turn it off.

As briefly mentioned previously at the end of Section 9.2 on page 23, the Uppercase option will add a small amount of tracking between uppercase letters, seen in Example 34, which uses the Romande fonts¹¹ (thanks to Clea F. Rees for the suggestion). The Uppercase option acts separately to the regular kerning controlled by the On/Off options.

Example 34: Adding extra kerning for uppercase letters. (The difference is usually very small.)

	\fontspec{Romande ADF Std Bold} UPPERCASE EXAMPLE \\
UPPERCASE EXAMPLE	\addfontfeature{Kerning=Uppercase}
UPPERCASE EXAMPLE	UPPERCASE EXAMPLE

¹¹http://arkandis.tuxfamily.org/adffonts.html

Example 35: Articifial font transformations.			
		\fontspec{Charis SIL} \emph{ABCxyz} \fontspec{Charis SIL}[FakeSlant=0.2] ABCxyz	
ABCxyz	ABCxyz	\fontspec{Charis SIL} ABCxyz \fontspec{Charis SIL}[FakeStretch=1.2] ABCxyz	
ABCxyz ABCxyz ABCxyz ABCxyz	\fontspec{Charis SIL} \textbf{ABCxyz} \fontspec{Charis SIL}[FakeBold=1.5] ABCxyz		

Example 36: Annotation forms for OpenType fonts.

```
123456789
(1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9)
(1 (2 (3 (4 (5 (6 (7 (8 (9
1) 2) 3) 4) 5) 6) 7) 8) 9)
(1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9)
0 2 8 4 6 6 7 8 9
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
                             \fontspec{Hiragino Maru Gothic Pro}
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
                             1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
123456789
                             \def\x#1{\\{\addfontfeature{Annotation=#1}
023456789
                                      1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 }}
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9.
                             x0\x1\x2\x3\x4\x5\x6\x7\x7\x8\x9
```

9.13 Font transformations

In rare situations users may want to mechanically distort the shapes of the glyphs in the current font such as shown in Example 35. Please don't overuse these features; they are *not* a good alternative to having the real shapes.

If values are omitted, their defaults are as shown above.

If you want the bold shape to be faked automatically, or the italic shape to be slanted automatically, use the AutoFakeBold and AutoFakeSlant features. For example, the following two invocations are equivalent:

```
\fontspec[AutoFakeBold=1.5]{Charis SIL}
\fontspec[BoldFeatures={FakeBold=1.5}]{Charis SIL}
```

If both of the AutoFake... features are used, then the bold italic font will also be faked.

The FakeBold and AutoFakeBold features are only available with the $X_{\overline{1}}T_{\overline{2}}X$ engine and will be ignored in Lua $T_{\overline{2}}X$.

9.14 Annotation

Some fonts are equipped with an extensive range of numbers and numerals in different forms. These are accessed with the Annotation feature (OpenType feature nalt), selected numerically as shown in Example 36.

Note that the indexing starts from zero.

Table 11: Options for the OpenType font feature 'CJKShape'.

Feature	Option	Tag
CJKShape =	Traditional Simplified JIS1978 JIS1983	trad smpl jp78 jp83
	JIS1990 Expert NLC	jp90 expt nlck

Example 37: Different standards for CJK ideograph presentation.

	\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}	
地形特拉 机头毛	{\addfontfeature{CJKShape=Traditional}	
唖噛躯 妍并訝	\text } \\	
证法分分 拉	{\addfontfeature{CJKShape=NLC}	
唖噛躯 姸幷訝	\text } \\	
啞嚙騙 妍并訝	<pre>{\addfontfeature{CJKShape=Expert}</pre>	
吧吧 烟柳 外 开动	<pre>\text }</pre>	

9.15 CJK shape

There have been many standards for how CJK ideographic glyphs are 'supposed' to look. Some fonts will contain many alternate glyphs available in order to be able to display these gylphs correctly in whichever form is appropriate. Both AAT and OpenType fonts support the following CJKShape options: Traditional, Simplified, JIS1978, JIS1983, JIS1990, and Expert. OpenType also supports the NLC option.

9.16 Character width

Many Asian fonts are equipped with variously spaced characters for shoe-horning into their generally monospaced text. These are accessed through the CharacterWidth feature.

Japanese alphabetic glyphs (in Hiragana or Katakana) may be typeset proportionally, to better fit horizontal measures, or monospaced, to fit into the rigid grid imposed by

Table 12: Options for the OpenType font feature 'CharacterWidth'.

Feature	Option	Tag
CharacterWidth =	Full Half Third Quarter AlternateProportional	
	AlternateHalf	halt

Example 38: Proportional or fixed width forms.

```
\mbox[2.5cm][1]{\text{textb}}%
                                               \makebox[2.5cm][1]{abcdef}}
                                       \fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}
ようこそ
          ワカヨタレソ
                        abcdef
                                       {\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Proportional}\test}\\
ようこそ
          ワカヨタレソ
                        abcdef
                                       {\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Full}\test}\\
ようこそ
          ワカヨタレソ
                       abcdef
                                       {\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Half}\test}
```

Example 39: Numbers can be compressed significantly.

ideographic typesetting. In this latter case, there are also half-width forms for squeezing more kana glyphs (which are less complex than the kanji they are amongst) into a given block of space. The same features are given to roman letters in Japanese fonts, for typesetting foreign words in the same style as the surrounding text.

The same situation occurs with numbers, which are provided in increasingly illegible compressed forms seen in Example 39.

9.17 Vertical typesetting

TODO!

9.18 OpenType scripts and languages

Fonts that include glyphs for various scripts and languages may contain different font features for the different character sets and languages they support, and different font features may behave differently depending on the script or language chosen. When multilingual fonts are used, it is important to select which language they are being used for, and more importantly what script is being used.

The 'script' refers to the alphabet in use; for example, both English and French use the Latin script. Similarly, the Arabic script can be used to write in both the Arabic and Persian languages.

The Script and Language features are used to designate this information. The possible options are tabulated in Table 13 on page 36 and Table 14 on page 37, respectively. When a script or language is requested that is not supported by the current font, a warning is printed in the console output.

Example 40: An example of various Scripts and Languages.

\testfeature{Script=Arabic}{\arabictext} મર્યાદા-સૂયક નવિદન મેંયાદા-સૂયક નિવેદન \testfeature{Script=Devanagari}{\devanagaritext} \testfeature{Script=Bengali}{\bengalitext} നമ്മടപൊരബര്യ നമ്മടെ പാരബര്യ \testfeature{Script=Gujarati}{\gujaratitext} ਆਦ ਸਿਚੂ ਜੁਗਾਦ ਸਿਚੂ ਆਦਿ ਸਚੂ ਜੁਗਾਦਿ ਸਚੂ \testfeature{Script=Malayalam}{\malayalamtext} \testfeature{Script=Gurmukhi}{\gurmukhitext} தமிழ் தடேி தமிழ் தேடி \testfeature{Script=Tamil}{\tamiltext} רְדְתָּה רִבָּתה \testfeature{Script=Hebrew}{\hebrewtext} \def\examplefont{Doulos SIL} cấp số mỗi cấp số mỗi \testfeature{Language=Vietnamese}{\vietnamesetext}

Because these font features can change which features are able to be selected for the font, they are automatically selected by fontspec before all others and, if X=TEX is being used, will specifically select the OpenType renderer for this font, as described in Section 11.3 on page 39.

9.18.1 Script and Language examples

In the examples shown in Example 40, the Code2000 font 12 is used to typeset various input texts with and without the OpenType Script applied for various alphabets. The text is only rendered correctly in the second case; many examples of incorrect diacritic spacing as well as a lack of contextual ligatures and rearrangement can be seen. Thanks to Jonathan Kew, Yves Codet and Gildas Hamel for their contributions towards these examples.

9.18.2 Defining new scripts and languages

\newfontscript
\newfontlanguage

While the scripts and languages listed in Table 13 and Table 14 are intended to be comprehensive, there may be some missing; alternatively, you might wish to use different names to access scripts/languages that are already listed. Adding scripts and languages can be performed with the \newfontscript and \newfontlanguage commands. For example,

\newfontscript{Arabic}{arab}
\newfontlanguage{Zulu}{ZUL}

The first argument is the fontspec name, the second the OpenType tag. The advantage to using these commands rather than \newfontfeature (see Section 13 on page 44) is the error-checking that is performed when the script or language is requested.

¹²http://www.code2000.net/

Part III

LuaTeX-only font features

10 OpenType font feature files

An OpenType font feature file is a plain text file describing OpenType layout feature of a font in a human-readable format. The syntax of OpenType feature files is defined by Adobe¹³.

Feature files can be used to add or customize OpenType features of a font on the fly without editing the font file itself.

Adding a new OpenType feature is as creating a plain text file defining the new feature and then loading it by passing its name or path to FeatureFile, then OpenType features defined in the file can be activated as usual.

For example, when adding one of the default features like kern or liga, no special activation is needed. On the other hand, an optional feature like onum or smcp will be activated when old style numbers or small capitals are activated, respectively. However, OpenType feature in the feature file can have any and that can be used to selectively activate the feature; for example defining a ligature feature called mlig and then activating it using RawFeature option without activating other ligatures in the font.

Figure 1 shows an example feature file. The first two lines set the script and language under which the defined features will be available, which the default language in both default and Latin scripts, respectively.

Then it defines a liga feature, which is a glyph substitution feature. The names starting with backslash are glyph names that is to be substituted and while the leading backslash is optional, it is used to escape glyph names when they interfere with preserved keywords. It should also be noted that glyph names are font specific and the same glyph can be named differently in different fonts.

Glyph positioning features like kerning can be defined in a similar way, but instead

Table 13: Defined Scripts for OpenType fonts. Aliased names are shown in adjacent positions marked with red pilcrows (\P).

Arabic	Ethiopic	Limbu	Sumero-Akkadian
Armenian	Georgian	Linear B	Cuneiform
Balinese	Glagolitic	Malayalam	Syloti Nagri
Bengali	Gothic	\P Math	Syriac
Bopomofo	Greek	¶Maths	Tagalog
Braille	Gujarati	Mongolian	Tagbanwa
Buginese	Gurmukhi	Musical Symbols	Tai Le
Buhid	Hangul Jamo	Myanmar	Tai Lu
Byzantine Music	Hangul	N'ko	Tamil
Canadian Syllabics	Hanunoo	Ogham	Telugu
Cherokee	Hebrew	Old Italic	Thaana
¶CJK	¶Hiragana and Katakana	Old Persian Cuneiform	Thai
¶CJK Ideographic	¶Kana	Oriya	Tibetan
Coptic	Javanese	Osmanya	Tifinagh
Cypriot Syllabary	Kannada	Phags-pa	Ugaritic Cuneiform
Cyrillic	Kharosthi	Phoenician	Yi
Default	Khmer	Runic	
Deseret	Lao	Shavian	
Devanagari	Latin	Sinhala	

¹³http://www.adobe.com/devnet/opentype/afdko/topic_feature_file_syntax.html

Table 14: Defined Languages for OpenType fonts. Aliased names are shown in adjacent positions marked with red pilcrows (\P).

Abaza	Default	lgbo	Koryak	Norway House Cree	Serer
Abkhazian	Dogri	ljo	Ladin	Nisi	South Slavey
Adyghe Afrikaans	Divehi	Ilokano Indonesian	Lahuli Lak	Niuean Nkole	Southern Sami Suri
Afar	Djerma Dangme	Ingush	Lak Lambani	N'ko	Svan
Agaw	Dangme Dinka	Inuktitut	Lao	Dutch	Swedish
Altai	Dungan	Irish	Latin	Nogai	Swadaya Aramaic
Amharic	Dzongkha	Irish Traditional	Laz	Norwegian	Swahili
Arabic	Ebira	Icelandic	L-Cree	Northern Sami	Swazi
Aari	Eastern Cree	Inari Sami	Ladakhi	Northern Tai	Sutu
Arakanese	Edo	Italian	Lezgi	Esperanto	Syriac
Assamese	Efik	Hebrew	Lingala	Nynorsk	Tabasaran
Athapaskan	Greek	Javanese	Low Mari	Oji-Cree	Tajiki
Avar	English	Yiddish	Limbu	Ojibway	Tamil
Awadhi	Erzya	Japanese	Lomwe	Oriya	Tatar
Aymara	Spanish	Judezmo	Lower Sorbian	Oromo	TH-Cree
Azeri	Estonian	Jula	Lule Sami	Ossetian	Telugu
Badaga	Basque	Kabardian	Lithuanian	Palestinian Aramaic	Tongan
Baghelkhandi	Evenki	Kachchi	Luba	Pali	Tigre
Balkar	Even	Kalenjin	Luganda	Punjabi	Tigrinya
Baule	Ewe	Kannada	Luhya	Palpa	Thai
Berber	French Antillean	Karachay	Luo	Pashto	Tahitian
Bench	¶Farsi	Georgian	Latvian	Polytonic Greek	Tibetan
Bible Cree	¶Parsi	Kazakh	Majang	Pilipino	Turkmen
Belarussian	¶Persian	Kebena	Makua	Palaung	Temne
Bemba	Finnish	Khutsuri Georgian	Malayalam	Polish	Tswana
Bengali	Fijian	Khakass	Traditional	Provencal	Tundra Nenets
Bulgarian	Flemish	Khanty-Kazim	Mansi	Portuguese	Tonga
Bhili	Forest Nenets	Khmer	Marathi	Chin	Todo
Bhojpuri	Fon	Khanty-Shurishkar	Marwari	Rajasthani	Turkish
Bikol Bilen	Faroese French	Khanty-Vakhi Khowar	Mbundu Manchu	R-Cree Russian Buriat	Tsonga
Blackfoot	Frencn Frisian		Moose Cree	Riang	Turoyo Aramaic Tulu
Balochi	Friulian	Kikuyu Kirghiz	Mende	Rhaeto-Romanic	Tuvin
Balante	Futa	Kirgiliz	Me'en	Romanian	Twi
Balti	Fulani	Kokni	Mizo	Romany	Udmurt
Bambara	Ga	Kalmyk	Macedonian	Rusyn	Ukrainian
Bamileke	Gaelic	Kamba	Male	Ruanda	Urdu
Breton	Gagauz	Kumaoni	Malagasy	Russian	Upper Sorbian
Brahui	Galician	Komo	Malinke	Sadri	Uyghur
Braj Bhasha	Garshuni	Komso	Malayalam	Sanskrit	Uzbek
Burmese	Garhwali	Kanuri	Reformed	Santali	Venda
Bashkir	Ge'ez	Kodagu	Malay	Sayisi	Vietnamese
Beti	Gilyak	Korean Old Hangul	Mandinka	Sekota	Wa
Catalan	Gumuz	Konkani	Mongolian	Selkup	Wagdi
Cebuano	Gondi	Kikongo	Manipuri	Sango	West-Cree
Chechen	Greenlandic	Komi-Permyak	Maninka	Shan	Welsh
Chaha Gurage	Garo	Korean	Manx Gaelic	Sibe	Wolof
Chattisgarhi	Guarani	Komi-Zyrian	Moksha	Sidamo	Tai Lue
Chichewa	Gujarati	Kpelle	Moldavian	Silte Gurage	Xhosa
Chukchi	Haitian	Krio	Mon	Skolt Sami	Yakut
Chipewyan	Halam	Karakalpak	Moroccan	Slovak	Yoruba
Cherokee	Harauti	Karelian	Maori	Slavey	Y-Cree
Chuvash	Hausa	Karaim	Maithili Maltese	Slovenian	Yi Classic
Comorian	Hawaiin	Karen Koorete		Somali	Yi Modern
Coptic	Hammer-Banna	Koorete Kashmiri	Mundari	Samoan	Chinese Hong Kong
Cree Carrier	Hiligaynon Hindi	Kasnmiri Khasi	Naga-Assamese Nanai	Sena Sindhi	Chinese Phonetic Chinese Simplified
Carrier Crimean Tatar	Hindi High Mari	Kildin Sami	Naskapi	Sinhalese	Chinese Simplified Chinese Traditional
Church Slavonic	High Mari Hindko	Kui Sami	N-Cree	Soninke	Zande
Czech	Но	Kulvi	Ndebele	Sodo Gurage	Zulu
Danish	Harari	Kumyk	Ndonga	Sotho	Luiu
Darigwa	Croatian	Kurdish	Nepali	Albanian	
Woods Cree	Hungarian	Kurukh	Newari	Serbian	
German	Armenian	Kuy	Nagari	Saraiki	
- <::::#:::	***************************************	,	-0	× =: = ::::	

Figure 1: An example font feature file.

```
languagesystem DFLT dflt;
languagesystem latn dflt;

# Ligatures
feature liga {
    sub \f \i by \fi;
    sub \f \l by \fl;
} liga;

# Kerning
feature kern {
    pos \A \Y -200;
    pos \a \y -80;
} kern;
```

Example 41: $X_{\overline{H}}T_{\overline{E}}X's$ Mapping feature.

```
"¡A small amount of—text!" \fontspec{Cochin}[Mapping=tex-text] \\\'!\'A small amount of---text!''
```

of the keyword sub(stitute) the keyword pos(ition) is used instead. Figure 1 shows an example of adding kerning between AY and ${\sf ay}^{14}$.

Lines starting with # are comments and will be ignored.

An OpenType feature file can have any number of features and can have a mix of substitution and positioning features, please refer to the full feature file specification for further documentation.

Part IV

Fonts and features with X_TT_EX

11 X_HT_EX-only font features

The features described here are available for any font selected by fontspec.

11.1 Mapping

Mapping enables a X_HT_EX text-mapping scheme, shown in Example 41.

Using the tex-text mapping is also equivalent to writing Ligatures=TeX. The use of the latter syntax is recommended for better compatibility with LuaTeX documents.

¹⁴ The kerning is expressed in font design units which are fractions of em depending on the *units per em* value of the font, usually 1000 for PostScript fonts and 2048 for TrueType fonts.

Example 42: The LetterSpace feature.

\fontspec{Didot}
\addfontfeature{LetterSpace=0.0}
USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT \\
\addfontfeature{LetterSpace=2.0}
USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT

USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT

11.2 Letter spacing

Letter spacing, or tracking, is the term given to adding (or subtracting) a small amount of horizontal space in between adjacent characters. It is specified with the LetterSpace, which takes a numeric argument, shown in Example 42.

The letter spacing parameter is a normalised additive factor (not a scaling factor); it is defined as a percentage of the font size. That is, for a $10\,\mathrm{pt}$ font, a letter spacing parameter of '1.0' will add $0.1\,\mathrm{pt}$ between each letter.

This functionality *should not be used for lowercase text*, which is spacing correctly to begin with, but it can be very useful, in small amounts, when setting small caps or all caps titles. Also see the OpenType Uppercase option of the Letters feature (Section 9.2 on page 23).

11.3 Different font technologies: AAT and OpenType

X \exists TeX supports two rendering technologies for typesetting, selected with the Renderer font feature. The first, AAT, is that provided (only) by Mac OS X itself. The second, OpenType, is an open source OpenType interpreter. It provides greater support for OpenType features, notably contextual arrangement, over AAT.

In general, this feature will not need to be explicitly called: for OpenType fonts, the OpenType renderer is used automatically, and for AAT fonts, AAT is chosen by default. Some fonts, however, will contain font tables for *both* rendering technologies, such as the Hiragino Japanese fonts distributed with Mac OS X, and in these cases the choice may be required.

Among some other font features only available through a specific renderer, OpenType provides for the Script and Language features, which allow different font behaviour for different alphabets and languages; see Section 9.18 on page 34 for the description of these features. Because these font features can change which features are able to be selected for the font instance, they are selected by fontspec before all others and will automatically and without warning select the OpenType renderer.

11.4 Optical font sizes

Multiple Master fonts are parameterised over orthogonal font axes, allowing continuous selection along such features as weight, width, and optical size (see ?? on page ?? for further details). Whereas an OpenType font will have only a few separate optical sizes, a Multiple Master font's optical size can be specified over a continuous range. Unfortunately, this flexibility makes it harder to create an automatic interface through LaTeX, and the optical size for a Multiple Master font must always be specified explicitly.

```
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[OpticalSize=11]

MM optical size test \\
```

 $^{^{15}} v 2.4 :$ This was called 'ICU' in previous versions of XHTeX and fontspec. Backwards compatibility is preserved.

```
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[OpticalSize=47]
MM optical size test
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[OpticalSize=71]
MM optical size test
\footnote{\text{Minion MM Roman}}
\footnote
```

12 Mac OS X's AAT fonts

Warning! $X \exists T \exists X'$ implementation on Mac OS X is currently in a state of flux and the information contained below may well be wrong from 2013 onwards. There is a good chance that the features described in this section will not be available any more as $X \exists T \exists X'$ completes its transition to a cross-platform—only application.

Mac OS X's font technology began life before the ubiquitous-OpenType era and revolved around the Apple-invented 'AAT' font format. This format had some advantages (and other disadvantages) but it never became widely popular in the font world.

Nonetheless, this is the font format that was first supported by X¬TEX (due to its pedigree on Mac OS X in the first place) and was the first font format supported by fontspec. A number of fonts distributed with Mac OS X are still in the AAT format, such as 'Skia'.

12.1 Ligatures

Ligatures refer to the replacement of two separate characters with a specially drawn glyph for functional or æsthetic reasons. For AAT fonts, you may choose from any combination of Required, Common, Rare (or Discretionary), Logos, Rebus, Diphthong, Squared, AbbrevSquared, and Icelandic.

Some other Apple AAT fonts have those 'Rare' ligatures contained in the Icelandic feature. Notice also that the old TEX trick of splitting up a ligature with an empty brace pair does not work in XTEX; you must use a 0 pt kern or \hbox (e.g., \null) to split the characters up if you do not want a ligature to be performed (the usual examples for when this might be desired are words like 'shelffull').

12.2 Letters

The Letters feature specifies how the letters in the current font will look. For AAT fonts, you may choose from Normal, Uppercase, Lowercase, SmallCaps, and InitialCaps.

12.3 Numbers

The Numbers feature defines how numbers will look in the selected font. For AAT fonts, they may be a combination of Lining or OldStyle and Proportional or Monospaced (the latter is good for tabular material). The synonyms Uppercase and Lowercase are equivalent to Lining and OldStyle, respectively. The differences have been shown previously in Section 6.3 on page 15.

12.4 Contextuals

This feature refers to glyph substitution that vary by their position; things like contextual swashes are implemented here. The options for AAT fonts are WordInitial, WordFinal (Example 43), LineInitial, LineFinal, and Inner (Example 44, also called 'non-final' sometimes). As non-exclusive selectors, like the ligatures, you can turn them off by prefixing their name with No.

Example 43: Contextual glyph for the beginnings and ends of words.

[Contextuals=WordInitial, WordFinal] where is all the vegenite

\newfontface\fancy{Hoefler Text Italic}
 [Contextuals={WordInitial,WordFinal}]
\fancy where is all the vegemite

Example 44: A contextual feature for the 'long s' can be convenient as the character does not need to be marked up explicitly.

	\fontspec{Hoefler Text}[Contextuals=Inner]
'Inner' fwashes can fometimes	`Inner' swashes can \emph{sometimes} \\
contain the archaic long s.	contain the archaic long [~] s.

12.5 Vertical position

The VerticalPosition feature is used to access things like subscript (Inferior) and superscript (Superior) numbers and letters (and a small amount of punctuation, sometimes). The Ordinal option is (supposed to be) contextually sensitive to only raise characters that appear directly after a number. These are shown in Example 45.

The realscripts package (also loaded by xltxtra) redefines the \textsubscript and \textsuperscript commands to use the above font features, including for use in footnote labels.

12.6 Fractions

Many fonts come with the capability to typeset various forms of fractional material. This is accessed in fontspec with the Fractions feature, which may be turned On or Off in both AAT and OpenType fonts.

In AAT fonts, the 'fraction slash' or solidus character, is to be used to create fractions. When Fractions are turned On, then only pre-drawn fractions will be used. See Example 46.

Using the Diagonal option (AAT only), the font will attempt to create the fraction from superscript and subscript characters.

Some (Asian fonts predominantly) also provide for the Alternate feature shown in Example 47.

Example 45: Vertical position for AAT fonts.

\[
\begin{array}{c} \fontspec{Skia} \\ \normal \\ \fontspec{Skia}[\text{VerticalPosition=Superior}] \\ \normal \\ \fontspec{Skia}[\text{VerticalPosition=Inferior}] \\ \normal \\normal \\ \normal \

Example 46: Fractions in AAT fonts. The ^^^2044 glyph is the 'fraction slash' that may be typed in Mac OS X with opt+shift+1; not shown literally here due to font contraints.

Example 47: Alternate design of pre-composed fractions.

12.7 Variants

The Variant feature takes a single numerical input for choosing different alphabetic shapes. Don't mind my fancy Example 48:) I'm just looping through the nine (!) variants of Zapfino.

See Section 13 on page 44 for a way to assign names to variants, which should be done on a per-font basis.

12.8 Alternates

Selection of Alternates *again* must be done numerically; see Example 49. See Section 13 on page 44 for a way to assign names to alternates, which should be done on a per-font basis.

Example 48: Nine variants of Zapfino.

Example 49: Alternate shape selection must be numerical.

Sphinx Of Black Quartz, Judge Mr Vow Sphinx Of Black Quartz, Judge Mr Vow \fontspec{Hoefler Text Italic}[Alternate=0]
Sphinx Of Black Quartz, {\scshape Judge My Vow} \\
\fontspec{Hoefler Text Italic}[Alternate=1]
Sphinx Of Black Quartz, {\scshape Judge My Vow}

Example 50: Vertical typesetting.

共産主義者は

共産主義者

\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}

\verttext

\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}[Renderer=AAT,Vertical=RotatedGlyphs]\rotatebox{-90}{\verttext}% requires the graphicx package

12.9 Style

The options of the Style feature are defined in AAT as one of the following: Display, Engraved, IlluminatedCaps, Italic, Ruby, ¹⁶ TallCaps, or TitlingCaps.

Typical examples for these features are shown in Section 9.10.

12.10 CJK shape

There have been many standards for how CJK ideographic glyphs are 'supposed' to look. Some fonts will contain many alternate glyphs in order to be able to display these gylphs correctly in whichever form is appropriate. Both AAT and OpenType fonts support the following CJKShape options: Traditional, Simplified, JIS1978, JIS1983, JIS1990, and Expert. OpenType also supports the NLC option.

12.11 Character width

See Section 9.16 on page 33 for relevant examples; the features are the same between OpenType and AAT fonts. AAT also allows CharacterWidth=Default to return to the original font settings.

12.12 Vertical typesetting

TODO: improve!

 $X_{\overline{4}}$ TeX provides for vertical typesetting simply with the ability to rotate the individual glyphs as a font is used for typesetting, as shown in Example 50.

No actual provision is made for typesetting top-to-bottom languages; for an example of how to do this, see the vertical Chinese example provided in the XATEX documentation.

 $^{^{16}}$ 'Ruby' refers to a small optical size, used in Japanese typography for annotations.

This is Xe¸TeX þy Jonathan Kew.

\newAATfeature{Alternate}{HoeflerSwash}{17}{1}
\fontspec{Hoefler Text Italic}[Alternate=HoeflerSwash]
This is XeTeX by Jonathan Kew.

12.13 Diacritics

Diacritics are marks, such as the acute accent or the tilde, applied to letters; they usually indicate a change in pronunciation. In Arabic scripts, diacritics are used to indicate vowels. You may either choose to Show, Hide or Decompose them in AAT fonts. The Hide option is for scripts such as Arabic which may be displayed either with or without vowel markings. E.g., \fontspec[Diacritics=Hide]{...}

Some older fonts distributed with Mac OS X included '0/' etc. as shorthand for writing 'Ø' under the label of the Diacritics feature. If you come across such fonts, you'll want to turn this feature off (imagine typing hello/goodbye and getting 'helløgoodbye' instead!) by decomposing the two characters in the diacritic into the ones you actually want. I recommend using the proper LateX input conventions for obtaining such characters instead.

12.14 Annotation

Various Asian fonts are equipped with a more extensive range of numbers and numerals in different forms. These are accessed through the Annotation feature with the following options: Off, Box, RoundedBox, Circle, BlackCircle, Parenthesis, Period, RomanNumerals, Diamond, BlackSquare, BlackRoundSquare, and DoubleCircle.

Part V

Programming interface

This is the beginning of some work to provide some hooks that use fontspec for various macro programming purposes.

13 Defining new features

This package cannot hope to contain every possible font feature. Three commands are provided for selecting font features that are not provided for out of the box. If you are using them a lot, chances are I've left something out, so please let me know.

\newAATfeature

New AAT features may be created with this command:

Use the XaTeX file AAT-info. tex to obtain the code numbers. See Example 51.

New OpenType features may be created with this command:

 $\noindent \noindent \noindent\noindent \noindent \noindent \noindent \noindent \noindent \noin$

44

The synonym \newICUfeature is deprecated.

Here's what it would look like in practise:

\newopentypefeature{Style}{NoLocalForms}{-locl}

\newopentypefeature

Example 52: Assigning new arbitary features.

\newfontfeature{\NoAvoidD}{\Special=!Avo.\fontspec{Zapfino}[AvoidD, Variant=1]} \sockdolager rubdown \fontspec{Zapfino}[NoAvoidD, Variant=1]

\newfontfeature{AvoidD}{Special=Avoid d-collisions} \newfontfeature{NoAvoidD}{Special=!Avoid d-collisions}

sockdolager rubdown

Example 53: Using raw font features directly.

\fontspec{texgyrepagella-regular.otf}[RawFeature=+smcp]

PAGELLA SMALL CAPS

Pagella small caps

\newfontfeature

In case the above commands do not accommodate the desired font feature (perhaps a new XaTeX feature that fontspec hasn't been updated to support), a command is provided to pass arbitrary input into the font selection string:

 $\verb|\newfontfeature|{\langle name \rangle}| {\langle input \ string \rangle}|$

For example, Zapfino contains the feature 'Avoid d-collisions'. To access it with this package, you could do some like that shown in Example 52. (For some reason this feature doesn't appear to be working although fontspec is doing the right thing. To be investigated.)

The advantage to using the \newAATfeature and \newopentypefeature commands instead of \newfontfeature is that they check if the selected font actually contains the desired font feature at load time. By contrast, \newfontfeature will not give a warning for improper input.

Going behind fontspec's back 14

Expert users may wish not to use fontspec's feature handling at all, while still taking advantage of its LATEX font selection conveniences. The RawFeature font feature allows literal XETEX font feature selection when you happen to have the OpenType feature tag memorised.

Multiple features can either be included in a single declaration:

[RawFeature=+smcp; +onum]

or with multiple declarations:

[RawFeature=+smcp, RawFeature=+onum]

Renaming existing features & options

\aliasfontfeature

If you don't like the name of a particular font feature, it may be aliased to another with the \aliasfontfeature{\(\lambda existing name\)}\(\lambda \) command, such as shown in Example 54.

Spaces in feature (and option names, see below) are allowed. (You may have noticed this already in the lists of OpenType scripts and languages).

\aliasfontfeatureoption

If you wish to change the name of a font feature option, it can be aliased to another with the command $\aliasfontfeatureoption{ <math>\langle font \ feature \rangle$ }{ $\langle existing \ name \rangle$ }{ $\langle new \ name \rangle$ }, such as shown in Example 55.

	Example 54	4: Renaming font features.
	Roman Letters <i>And Swash</i>	\aliasfontfeature{ItalicFeatures}{IF} \fontspec{Hoefler Text}[IF = {Alternate=1}] Roman Letters \itshape And Swash
	Example 55: I	Renaming font feature options.
Scientific Inferior: 12	LinLibertine_R	<pre>VerticalPosition){ScientificInferior}{Sci Inf} R.otf)[Vert Pos=Sci Inf]</pre>

This example demonstrates an important point: when aliasing the feature options, the *original* feature name must be used when declaring to which feature the option belongs.

Only feature options that exist as sets of fixed strings may be altered in this way. That is, Proportional can be aliased to Prop in the Letters feature, but 550099BB cannot be substituted for Purple in a Color specification. For this type of thing, the <text> newfontfeature command should be used to declare a new, e.g., PurpleColor feature:

\newfontfeature{PurpleColor}{color=550099BB}

Except that this example was written before support for named colours was implemented. But you get the idea.

16 Programming details

In some cases, it is useful to know what the LaTeX font family of a specific fontspec font is. After a \fontspec-like command, this is stored inside the \l_fontspec_family_tl macro. Otherwise, LaTeX's own \f@family macro can be useful here, too. The raw T_EX font that is defined is stored temporarily in \l_fontspec_font.

The following commands in expl3 syntax may be used for writing code that interfaces with fontspec-loaded fonts. All of the following conditionals also exist with T and F as well as TF suffixes.

\fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF	Test whether the currently selected font has been loaded by fontspec.
\fontspec_if_aat_feature:nnTF	Test whether the currently selected font contains the AAT feature (#1,#2).
\fontspec_if_opentype:TF	Test whether the currently selected font is an OpenType font. Always true for LuaTeX fonts.
\fontspec_if_feature:nTF	Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType feature #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_feature:nTF {pnum} {True} {False}. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
\fontspec_if_feature:nnnTF	Test whether the currently selected font with raw OpenType script tag #1 and raw OpenType

lest whether the currently selected font with raw OpenType script tag #1 and raw OpenType language tag #2 contains the raw OpenType feature tag #3. E.g.: \fontspec_if_feature:nTF {latn} {ROM} {pnum} {Tr Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

\fontspec_if_script:nTF

Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType script #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_script:nTF {latn} {True} {False}. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

\fontspec_if_language:nTF

Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_language:nTF {ROM} {True} {False}. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

\fontspec_if_language:nnTF

Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #2 in script #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_language:nnTF {cyrl} {SRB} {True} {False}. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

fontspec_if_current_script:nTF

Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType script tag #1.

ntspec_if_current_language:nTF

Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType language tag #1.

\fontspec_set_family:Nnn

#1 : LATEX family #2 : fontspec features

#3: font name

Defines a new NFSS family from given $\langle \textit{features} \rangle$ and $\langle \textit{font} \rangle$, and stores the family name in the variable $\langle \textit{family} \rangle$. This font family can then be selected with standard LaTeX commands \fontfamily{\lambda family}\selectfont. See the standard fontspec user commands for applications of this function.

\fontspec_set_fontface:NNnn

#1 : primitive font #2 : LATEX family #3 : fontspec features #4 : font name

Variant of the above in which the primitive TEX font command is stored in the variable \(\textit{primitive font} \). If a family is loaded (with bold and italic shapes) the primitive font command will only select the regular face. This feature is designed for LATEX programmers who need to perform subsequent font-related tests on the \(\textit{primitive font} \).

Part VI

The patching/improvement of $\text{ET}_{E}X 2_{\varepsilon}$ and other packages

Derived originally from xltxtra, this package contains patches to various LATEX components and third-party packages to improve the default behaviour.

17 Inner emphasis

fixltx2e's method for checking for "inner" emphasis is a little fragile in $X_{\overline{1}}T_{\overline{1}}X$, because font slant information might be missing from the font. Therefore, we use $\underline{L}^{T}T_{\overline{1}}X$'s NFSS information, which is more likely to be correct.

18 Unicode footnote symbols

By default LATEX defines symbolic footnote characters in terms of commands that don't resolve well; better results can be achieved by using specific Unicode characters or proper LICRs with the xunicode package.

This problem is solved by defining \@fnsymbol in a similar manner to the fixltx2e package.

19 Verbatim

Many verbatim mechanisms assume the existence of a 'visible space' character that exists in the ASCII space slot of the typewriter font. This character is known in Unicode as U+2423: BOX OPEN, which looks like this: '_'.

When a Unicode typewriter font is used, LaTeX no longer prints visible spaces for the verbatim* environment and \verb* command. This problem is fixed by using the correct Unicode glyph, and the following packages are patched to do the same: listings, fancyvrb, moreverb, and verbatim.

In the case that the typewriter font does not contain '_', the Latin Modern Mono font is used as a fallback.

20 Discretionary hyphenation: \-

LATEX defines the macro \- to insert discretionary hyphenation points. However, it is hard-coded in LATEX to use the hyphen - character. Since fontspec makes it easy to change the hyphenation character on a per font basis, it would be nice if \- adjusted automatically — and now it does.

21 Commands for old-style and lining numbers

\oldstylenums \liningnums Large for the reverse option of holdstylenums relies on strange font encodings. We provide a fontspeccompatible alternative and while we're at it also throw in the reverse option as well. Use holdstylenums { $\langle text \rangle$ } to explicitly use old-style (or lowercase) numbers in $\langle text \rangle$, and the reverse for hiningnums { $\langle text \rangle$ }.

Part VII

fontspec.sty and friends

Herein lie the implementation details of this package. Welcome! It was my first.

22 'Header' code

We will eventually load the correct version of the code according to which engine we're running. As we'll see later, there are some minor differences between what we have to do in X¬ILATEX and LualATEX.

```
The expl3 module is fontspec.
```

```
1 \@@=fontspec\>
2 \*fontspec&!xetexx&!luatex\>
But for now, this is the shared code.
3 \RequirePackage{expl3}[2011/09/05]
4 \RequirePackage{xparse}
5 \ExplSyntaxOn
Quick fix for lualatex-math:
6 \cs_if_exist:NF \lua_now_x:n
```

7 { \cs_set_eq:NN \lua_now_x:n \directlua }

Check engine and load specific modules. For Lua $T_{\!E\!}X$, load only luaotfload which loads luatexbase and lualibs too.

```
8\msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {cannot-use-pdftex}
9 {
10 The fontspec package requires either XeTeX or LuaTeX to function.
11 \\\\
   You must change your typesetting engine to,
12
    e.g., "xelatex" or "lualatex"\\
13
   instead of plain "latex" or "pdflatex".
14
15 }
16 \xetex_if_engine:F
17 {
   \luatex_if_engine:TF
18
19
    {
     \RequirePackage{luaotfload}[2013/05/20]
20
     \RequireLuaModule{fontspec}
21
22
23
     \msg_fatal:nn {fontspec} {cannot-use-pdftex}
24
25
    }
26 }
```

22.1 expl3 tools

22.2 Bits and pieces

Conditionals

firsttime As \keys_set:nn is run multiple times, some of its information storing only occurs once while we decide if the font family has been defined or not. When the later processing is occuring per-shape this no longer needs to happen; this is indicated by the 'firsttime' conditional (initialised true).

```
27\bool_new:N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
                           28 \bool_new:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
                           29 \bool_new:N \l_@@_noit_bool
                           30 \bool_new:N \l_@@_nosc_bool
                           31 \bool_new:N \l_@@_tfm_bool
                           32 \bool_new:N \l_@@_atsui_bool
                           33 \bool_new:N \l_@@_ot_bool
                           34 \bool_new:N \l_@@_mm_bool
                           35\bool_new:N \l_@@_graphite_bool
                           For dealing with legacy maths
                           36\bool_new:N \g_@@_math_euler_bool
                           37\bool_new:N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool
                           38 \bool_new:N \g_@Q_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
                           For package options:
                           39 \bool_new:N \g_@@_cfg_bool
                           40 \bool_new:N \g_@@_math_bool
                           Counters
                           41 \int_new: N \l_fontspec_script_int
                           42 \int_new:N \l_fontspec_language_int
                           43 \int_new:N \l_fontspec_strnum_int
                           Other variables
                           44 \fp_new:N \l_@@_tmpa_fp
                           45 \fp_new:N \l_@@_tmpb_fp
                           46 \dim_new:N \l_@@_tmpa_dim
                           47 \dim_{\text{new}:N} 1_@@_{\text{tmpb}}
                           48 \dim_new:N \l_@@_tmpc_dim
                           49 \tl_set:Nx \c_colon_str { \tl_to_str:N : }
                           50 \cs_set:Npn \use_v:nnnnn #1#2#3#4#5 {#5}
                           51 \cs_set:Npn \use_iv:nnnnn #1#2#3#4#5 {#4}
                              Need these:
                           52 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_if_eq:nnTF {nv}
                           53 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \int_set:Nn {Nv}
                           54 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_set:nn {nx}
                           55 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_set_known:nnN {nx}
\@@_int_mult_truncate:Nn Missing in expl3, IMO.
                           56 \cs_new:Nn \@@_int_mult_truncate:Nn
                                 \int_set:Nn #1 { \__dim_eval:w #2 #1 \__dim_eval_end: }
                           58
                              }
                           59
```

22.3 Error/warning/info messages

Shorthands for messages:

```
60 \cs_new:Npn \@@_error:n
                            { \msg_error:nn
                                               {fontspec} }
61 \cs_new:Npn \@@_error:nx { \msg_error:nnx
                                               {fontspec} }
62 \cs_new:Npn \@@_warning:n { \msg_warning:nn {fontspec} }
63 \cs_new:Npn \@@_warning:nx { \msg_warning:nnx {fontspec} }
64 \cs_new:Npn \@@_warning:nxx { \msg_warning:nxx {fontspec} }
65 \cs_new:Npn \@@_info:n
                           { \msg_info:nn
                                               {fontspec} }
66\cs_new:Npn \@@_info:nx
                            { \msg_info:nnx
                                               {fontspec} }
67\cs_new:Npn \@@_info:nxx
                            { \msg_info:nnxx
                                               {fontspec} }
68 \cs_new:Npn \@@_trace:n
                            { \msg_trace:nn
                                               {fontspec} }
   Errors:
69 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-size-info}
70 {
71 Size information must be supplied.
72 For example, SizeFeatures={Size={8-12},...}.
73 }
74\msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {font-not-found}
75 {
76 The font "#1" cannot be found.
77 }
78 {
79 A font might not be found for many reasons. \\
80 Check the spelling, where the font is installed etc. etc. \\\
81 When in doubt, ask someone for help!
82 }
83 \msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {rename-feature-not-exist}
85 The feature #1 doesn't appear to be defined.
86 }
87 {
88 It looks like you're trying to rename a feature that doesn't exist.
90 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-glyph}
92 '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain glyph #1.
93 }
94 \msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {euler-too-late}
96 The euler package must be loaded BEFORE fontspec.
97 }
99 fontspec only overwrites euler's attempt to
100 define the math text fonts if fontspec is
101 loaded after euler. Type <return to proceed</pre>
102 with incorrect \string\mathit, \string\mathbf, etc.
103 }
104\msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {no-xcolor}
105 {
106 Cannot load named colours without the xcolor package.
```

```
107 }
108 {
109 Sorry, I can't do anything to help. Instead of loading
110 the color package, use xcolor instead. It's better.
111 }
112 \msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {unknown-color-model}
114 Error loading colour '#1'; unknown colour model.
115 }
116 {
117 Sorry, I can't do anything to help. Please report this error
118 to my developer with a minimal example that causes the problem.
119 }
Warnings:
120 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {addfontfeatures-ignored}
122 \string\addfontfeature (s) ignored;
123 it cannot be used with a font that wasn't selected by fontspec.
125 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {feature-option-overwrite}
127 Option '#2' of font feature '#1' overwritten.
128 }
129 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {script-not-exist-latn}
131 Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain script '#1'.\\
'Latin' script used instead.
133 }
134 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {script-not-exist}
136 Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain script '#1'.
137 }
138 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {aat-feature-not-exist}
'\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' feature not supported
141 for AAT font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'.
143 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {aat-feature-not-exist-in-font}
145 AAT feature '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' (#1) not available
in font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'.
147 }
148 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {icu-feature-not-exist}
    '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' feature not supported
151 for OpenType font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
152 }
153 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font}
154 {
155 OpenType feature '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' (#1) not available
156 for font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
```

```
with script '\lower 'l_@e_script_name_tl' and language '\lower 'l_@e_lang_name_tl'.
159 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-opticals}
'\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' doesn't appear to have an Optical Size axis.
162 }
163 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {language-not-exist}
164 {
165 Language '#1' not available
166 for font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
167 with script '\l_@@_script_name_tl'.\\
'Default' language used instead.
169 }
170 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {only-xetex-feature}
172 Ignored XeTeX only feature: '#1'.
173 }
174 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {only-luatex-feature}
176 Ignored LuaTeX only feature: '#1'.
177 }
178 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping}
180 Input mapping not (yet?) supported in LuaTeX.
181 }
182 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping-ligtex}
184 Input mapping not (yet?) supported in LuaTeX.\\
185 Use "Ligatures=TeX" instead of "Mapping=tex-text".
186 }
187 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {cm-default-obsolete}
189 The "cm-default" package option is obsolete.
190 }
191 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {fakebold-only-xetex}
193 The "FakeBold" and "AutoFakeBold" options are only available with XeLaTeX.\\
194 Option ignored.
195 }
Info messages:
196 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {defining-font}
198 Font family '\l_fontspec_family_tl' created for font '#2'
199 with options [\l_@@_all_features_clist].\\
200
    This font family consists of the following shapes:
201
202 \l_fontspec_defined_shapes_tl
203 }
204 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-font-shape}
205 {
206 Could not resolve font #1 (it probably doesn't exist).
```

```
207 }
208 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {set-scale}
   211 }
212 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {setup-math}
213 {
214 Adjusting the maths setup (use [no-math] to avoid this).
215 }
216 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-scripts}
217 {
218 Font `\l_fontspec_fontname_tl\space does `not `contain `any `OpenType `'Script' `information.
219 }
220 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {opa-twice}
222 Opacity set twice, in both Colour and Opacity.
223 Using specification "Opacity=#1".
224 }
225 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {opa-twice-col}
226 {
227 Opacity set twice, in both Opacity and Colour.\\
228 Using an opacity specification in hex of "#1/FF".
229 }
230 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {bad-colour}
232 Bad colour declaration "#1".
233 Colour must be one of:\\
   *~ a~ named~ xcolor~ colour\\
235 * a six-digit hex colour RRGGBB\\
236 * an eight-digit hex colour RRGGBBTT with opacity
237 }
```

22.4 Option processing

```
238 \DeclareOption{cm-default}
239 { \@@_warning:n {cm-default-obsolete} }
240 \DeclareOption{math}{\bool_set_true:N \g_@@_math_bool}
241 \DeclareOption{no-math}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}
242 \DeclareOption{config}{\bool_set_true:N \g_@@_cfg_bool}
243 \DeclareOption{no-config}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_cfg_bool}
244 \DeclareOption{quiet}
245 {
246 \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { warning } { info }
247 \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { info } { none }
248 }
249 \DeclareOption{silent}
    \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { warning } { none }
252 \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { info } { none }
253 }
254 \ExecuteOptions{config,math}
255 \ProcessOptions*
```

22.5 Packages

New for LuaTEX, we load a new package called 'fontspec-patches' designed to incorporate the hidden but useful parts of the old xltxtra package.

```
256 \RequirePackage{fontspec-patches}
257 \luatex_if_engine:T { \RequirePackage{fontspec-luatex} \endinput }
258 \xetex_if_engine:T { \RequirePackage{fontspec-xetex} \endinput }
259 \langle fontspec&!xetexx&!luatex \rangle
```

23 The main package code

That was the driver, and now the fun starts.

```
260 \langle *fontspec \& (xetexx | luatex) \rangle
261 \langle ExplSyntaxOn
```

23.1 Encodings

Frank Mittelbach has recommended using the 'EUx' family of font encodings to experiment with Unicode. Now that XaTeX can find fonts in the texmf tree, the Latin Modern OpenType fonts can be used as the defaults. See the euenc collection of files for how this is implemented.

```
262 \( \text{xetexx} \t1_set: \text{Nn \g_fontspec_encoding_t1 \ EU1 \} \)
263 \( \text{lustex} \t1_set: \text{Nn \g_fontspec_encoding_t1 \ EU2 \} \)
264 \t1_set: \text{Nn \rmdefault \ lmr \} \)
265 \t1_set: \text{Nn \sfdefault \ lmtt \} \)
266 \t1_set: \text{Nn \ttdefault \ lmtt \} \)
267 \\ \text{RequirePackage[\g_fontspec_encoding_t1] \ fontenc \} \)
268 \\ \t1_set_eq: \text{Nn \tTFencname \g_fontspec_encoding_t1 \% for xunicode} \)
Dealing with a couple of the problems introduced by babel:
269 \\ \t1_set_eq: \text{Nn \cyrillicencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_t1} \)
270 \\ \t1_set_eq: \text{Nn \latinencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_t1} \)
271 \\ \t275 \\\
```

That latin encoding definition is repeated to suppress font warnings. Something to do with \select@language ending up in the .aux file which is read at the beginning of the document.

xunicode Now we load xunicode, working around its internal X_HT_EX check when under LuaT_EX.

```
276 \( \text{xetexx} \) \\ RequirePackage{\text{xunicode}} \\
277 \( \text{*luatex} \) \\
278 \\ \text{cs_set_eq:NN \fontspec_tmp: \text{XeTeXpicfile}} \\
279 \\ \text{cs_set:Npn \text{XeTeXpicfile}} \{ \}
280 \\ \text{RequirePackage{\text{xunicode}}} \\
281 \\ \text{cs_set_eq:NN \text{XeTeXpicfile \fontspec_tmp:}} \\
282 \( \text{/luatex} \)
```

23.2 User commands

This section contains the definitions of the commands detailed in the user documentation. Only the 'top level' definitions of the commands are contained herein; they all use or define macros which are defined or used later on in Section 23.5 on page 68.

23.2.1 Helper macros for argument mangling

```
283 \cs_new:Nn \@@_pass_args:nnn
284 {
    \IfNoValueTF {#2}
285
     { \@@_post_arg:w {#1} {#3} }
286
287
     { #1 {#2} {#3} }
288 }
289 \NewDocumentCommand \@@_post_arg:w { m m O{} }
290 { #1 {#3} {#2} }
```

23.2.2 Font selection

\fontspec This is the main command of the package that selects fonts with various features. It takes two arguments: the font name and the optional requested features of that font. Then this new font family is selected.

```
291 \NewDocumentCommand \fontspec { o m }
292 { \@@_pass_args:nnn \@@_fontspec:nn {#1} {#2} }
294 \cs_new: Nn \@@_fontspec:nn
295 {
    \fontencoding {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}
296
    \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \f@family {#1}{#2}
297
    \selectfont
298
299
    \ignorespaces
300 }
```

\setmainfont \setsansfont \setmonofont

The following three macros perform equivalent operations setting the default font for a particular family: 'roman', sans serif, or typewriter (monospaced). I end them with \normalfont so that if they're used in the document, the change registers immediately.

```
301 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmainfont { o m }
302 { \@@_pass_args:nnn \@@_setmainfont:nn {#1} {#2} }
303
304 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setmainfont:nn
305 {
     \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \rmdefault {#1}{#2}
     \normalfont
307
308
    \ignorespaces
309 }
310
311 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setsansfont { o m }
312 { \@@_pass_args:nnn \@@_setsansfont:nn {#1} {#2} }
313
314 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setsansfont:nn
315 {
     \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \sfdefault {#1}{#2}
    \normalfont
```

```
318 \ignorespaces
                 319 }
                 320
                 321 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmonofont { o m }
                 322 { \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{00}\_pass\_args:nnn}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{00}\_setmonofont:nn}} \fi {#2} }
                 324 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setmonofont:nn
                 325 {
                 326 \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \ttdefault {#1}{#2}
                 327
                     \normalfont
                 328 \ignorespaces
                 329 }
 \setromanfont This is the old name for \setmainfont, retained for backwards compatibility.
                 330 \cs_set_eq:NN \setromanfont \setmainfont
    \setmathrm These commands are analogous to \setmainfont and others, but for selecting the font used
                 for \mathrm, etc. They can only be used in the preamble of the document. \setboldmathrm is
    \setmathsf
\setboldmathrm
                 used for specifying which fonts should be used in \boldmath.
    \setmathtt
                331 \tl_new:N \g_@@_mathrm_tl
                 332 \tl_new:N \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl
                 333 tl_new:N \g_@@_mathsf_tl
                 334 \tl_new:N \g_@@_mathtt_tl
                 335 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmathrm { o m }
                 336 { \ensuremath{\mbox{00\_pass\_args:nnn \ensuremathrm:nn $\{\#1\}$ }}
                 337
                 338 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setmathrm:nn
                 339 {
                     \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathrm_tl {#1} {#2}
                 341 }
                 342
                 343 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setboldmathrm { o m }
                 344 { \@@_pass_args:nnn \@@_setboldmathrm:nn {#1} {#2} }
                 345
                 346 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setboldmathrm:nn
                 347 {
                      \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl {#1} {#2}
                 349 }
                 350
                 351 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmathsf { o m }
                 352 { \@@_pass_args:nnn \@@_setmathsf:nn {#1} {#2} }
                 353
                 354 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setmathsf:nn
                     \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathsf_tl {#1} {#2}
                 356
                 357 }
                 358
                 359 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmathtt { o m }
                 360 { \@@_pass_args:nnn \@@_setmathtt:nn {#1} {#2} }
                 362 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setmathtt:nn
                 363 {
```

```
364 \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_@@_mathtt_tl {#1} {#2}
365 }
366 \@onlypreamble\setmathrm
367 \@onlypreamble\setboldmathrm
368 \@onlypreamble\setmathsf
369 \@onlypreamble\setmathtt
If the commands above are not executed, then \rmdefault (etc.) will be used.
370 \tl_set:Nn \g_@@_mathrm_tl {\rmdefault}
371 \tl_set:Nn \g_@@_mathsf_tl {\sfdefault}
372 \tl_set:Nn \g_@@_mathtt_tl {\ttdefault}
```

\newfontfamily
\newfontface

This macro takes the arguments of \fontspec with a prepended $\langle instance\ cmd \rangle$. This command is used when a specific font instance needs to be referred to repetitively (e.g., in a section heading) since continuously calling \fontspec_select:nn is inefficient because it must parse the option arguments every time.

 $\label{thm:local_select:nn} $$ font family and saves its name in \l_fontspec_family_tl. This family is then used in a typical NFSS \fontfamily declaration, saved in the macro name specified.$

```
373 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontfamily { m o m }
374 { \@@_pass_args:nnn { \@@_newfontfamily:Nnn #1 } {#2} {#3} }
376 \cs_new:Nn \@@_newfontfamily:Nnn
377 {
    \fontspec_set_family:cnn { g_@@_ \cs_to_str:N #1 _family } {#2} {#3}
378
379
    \use:x
380
381
       \exp_not:N \DeclareRobustCommand \exp_not:N #1
382
383
         \exp_not:N \fontencoding {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}
384
        \exp_not:N \fontfamily { \use:c \{g_@@_ \cs_to_str:N #1 _family\} } \exp_not:N \selectfont
385
        }
      }
386
387 }
\newfontface uses the fact that if the argument to BoldFont, etc., is empty (i.e., BoldFont={}),
then no bold font is searched for.
388 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontface { m o m }
389 { \@@_pass_args:nnn { \@@_newfontface:Nnn #1 } {#2} {#3} }
391 \cs_new:Nn \@@_newfontface:Nnn
392 {
```

23.2.3 Font feature selection

393 '

\defaultfontfeatures

This macro takes one argument that consists of all of feature options that will be applied by default to all subsequent \fontspec, et al., commands. It stores its value in \g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl (initialised empty), which is concatenated with the individual macro choices in the [...] macro.

\newfontfamily #1 [BoldFont={},ItalicFont={},SmallCapsFont={},#2] {#3}

```
395 \clist_new:N \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist
396 \prop_new:N \g_@@_fontopts_prop
```

```
397\DeclareDocumentCommand \defaultfontfeatures { t+ o m }
398 {
399
    \IfNoValueTF {#2}
400
     { \@@_set_default_features:nn {#1} {#3} }
     { \@@_set_font_default_features:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3} }
402
    \ignorespaces
403 }
404 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_default_features:nn
405 {
    \IfBooleanTF {#1} \clist_put_right:Nn \clist_set:Nn
406
     \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist {#2}
407
408 }
```

The optional argument specifies a font identifier. Branch for either (a) single token input such as \rmdefault, or (b) otherwise assume its a fontname. In that case, strip spaces and file extensions and lower-case to ensure consistency.

```
409 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_font_default_features:nnn
410 {
    \clist_map_inline:nn {#2}
411
412
     \tl_if_single:nTF {##1}
413
     { \tilde { } cs:w g_@e_ cs_to_str:N \#1 _familycs_end: } }
414
415
      { \ensuremath{\mbox{@0\_sanitise\_fontname:Nn }1_{\mbox{@0\_tmp\_tl }{\#1}} }
416
417
      \IfBooleanTF {#1}
418
419
       420
        { \tl_clear:N \l_@@_tmpb_tl }
       \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_tmpb_tl {#3,}
421
       422
      }
423
424
425
       \tl_if_empty:nTF {#3}
426
        { \prop\_gremove:NV \g_@Q_fontopts\_prop \l_@Q_tmp_tl }
                         \g_@@_fontopts\_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl {#3,} }
427
428
      }
    }
429
430 }
```

\@@_sanitise_fontname: Nn Assigns font name #2 to token list variable #1 and strips extension(s) from it in the case of an external font. We strip spaces for luatex for consistency with luaotfload, although I'm not sure this is necessary any more. At one stage this also lowercased the name, but this step has been removed unless someone can remind me why it was necessary.

```
431 \cs_new:Nn \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn
432 {
    \tl_set:Nx #1 {#2}
434 (luatex) \tl_remove_all:Nn #1 {~}
    \clist_map_inline:Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist
     { \tl_remove_once:Nn #1 {##1} }
436
437 }
```

\addfontfeatures

In order to be able to extend the feature selection of a given font, two things need to be known: the currently selected features, and the currently selected font. Every time a font family is created, this information is saved inside a control sequence with the name of the font family itself.

This macro extracts this information, then appends the requested font features to add to the already existing ones, and calls the font again with the top level \fontspec command.

The default options are *not* applied (which is why $\g_fontspec_default_fontopts_t1$ is emptied inside the group; this is allowed as $\l_fontspec_family_t1$ is globally defined in $\fontspec_select:nn$), so this means that the only added features to the font are strictly those specified by this command.

\addfontfeature is defined as an alias, as I found that I often typed this instead when adding only a single font feature.

```
438 \bool_new:N \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
439 \DeclareDocumentCommand \addfontfeatures {m}
440 {
441
    \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
442
    {
443
     \group_begin:
       444
445
       \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
446
       \use:x
447
448
        {
449
         \exp_not:N \fontspec_select:nn
450
          { l_0e_0 , #1 } {l_0e_1 fontname_tl}
451
     \group_end:
452
     \fontfamily\l_fontspec_family_tl\selectfont
453
454
    }
455
     \@@_warning:n {addfontfeatures-ignored}
456
    }
457
458
   \ignorespaces
459 }
460 \cs_set_eq:NN \addfontfeature \addfontfeatures
```

23.2.4 Defining new font features

 \newfontfeature

\newfontfeature takes two arguments: the name of the feature tag by which to reference it, and the string that is used to select the font feature.

\newAATfeature

This command assigns a new AAT feature by its code (#2,#3) to a new name (#1). Better than \newfontfeature because it checks if the feature exists in the font it's being used for.

```
471 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newAATfeature {mmmm}
                                                        472 {
                                                        473
                                                                    \keys_if_exist:nnF { fontspec } {#1}
                                                        474
                                                                        { \@@_define_font_feature:n {#1} }
                                                        475
                                                                    \keys_if_choice_exist:nnnT {fontspec} {#1} {#2}
                                                                        { \@@_warning:nxx {feature-option-overwrite} {#1} {#2} }
                                                        477
                                                                   \ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$d$}}}}\ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$d$}}}}\ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$d$}}}\ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$d$}}}\ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$d$}}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$d$}}\ensu
                                                        478 }
                                                        This command assigns a new OpenType feature by its abbreviation (#2) to a new name (#1).
         \newopentypefeature
                    \newICUfeature
                                                         Better than \newfontfeature because it checks if the feature exists in the font it's being used
                                                        479 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newopentypefeature {mmm}
                                                        480 {
                                                                   \keys_if_exist:nnF { fontspec / options } {#1}
                                                        481
                                                        482
                                                                        { \@@_define_font_feature:n {#1} }
                                                                   \keys_if_choice_exist:nnnT {fontspec} {#1} {#2}
                                                                        { \@@_warning:nxx {feature-option-overwrite} {#1} {#2} }
                                                        484
                                                                   485
                                                        486 }
                                                        487 \cs_set_eq:NN \newICUfeature \newopentypefeature % deprecated
              \aliasfontfeature
                                                         User commands for renaming font features and font feature options.
\aliasfontfeatureoption
                                                        488 \DeclareDocumentCommand \aliasfontfeature {mm}
                                                        489 {
                                                        490
                                                                   \clist_map_inline:nn
                                                                     { fontspec, fontspec-preparse, fontspec-preparse-external,
                                                        491
                                                        492
                                                                          fontspec-preparse-nested, fontspec-renderer }
                                                        493
                                                                     {
                                                                           \keys_if_exist:nnT {##1} {#1}
                                                        494
                                                        495
                                                                            {
                                                                                 \clist_map_break:n
                                                        496
                                                        497
                                                                                           \@@_alias_font_feature:nnn {##1} {#1} {#2}
                                                        498
                                                                                          \use_none_delimit_by_q_nil:w
                                                        499
                                                        500
                                                        501
                                                                             }
                                                        502
                                                        503
                                                                   % this executes if no match was found:
                                                        504
                                                                   \@@_warning:nx {rename-feature-not-exist} {#1}
                                                        505
                                                        506
                                                                   \% jump to here if a match:
                                                        507
                                                        508
                                                                   \use none:n
                                                                   \q_nil
                                                        509
                                                        510 }
                                                        511
                                                        512 \cs_set:Nn \@@_alias_font_feature:nnn
                                                        513
                                                                        \keys_define:nn {#1}
                                                                            { #3 .code:n = { \keys_set:nn {#1} { #2 = {##1} } } }
                                                        515
```

516 }

```
517
518 \DeclareDocumentCommand \aliasfontfeatureoption {mmm}
519 { \keys_define:nn { fontspec / #1 } { #3 .meta:n = {#2} } }
```

\newfontscript Mostly used internally, but also possibly useful for users, to define new OpenType 'scripts', mapping logical names to OpenType script tags. Iterates though the scripts in the selected font to check that it's a valid feature choice, and then prepends the (X\(\text{TEX}\))\font feature string with the appropriate script selection tag.

```
520 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontscript {mm}
521 {
522
    \fontspec_new_script:nn {#1} {#2}
523
    \fontspec_new_script:nn {#2} {#2}
524 }
525 \keys_define:nn { fontspec } { Script .choice: }
526 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_new_script:nn
     \keys_define:nn { fontspec } { Script / #1 .code:n =
528
       \fontspec_check_script:nTF {#2}
529
530
         \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_tl {#2}
531
         \int_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
532
533
        }
534
        {
         \fontspec_check_script:nTF {latn}
535
536
537
           \@@_warning:nx {script-not-exist-latn} {#1}
538
           \keys_set:nn {fontspec} {Script=Latin}
539
540
           \@@_warning:nx {script-not-exist} {#1}
541
542
          }
543
        }
      }
544
545 }
```

\newfontlanguage

Mostly used internally, but also possibly useful for users, to define new OpenType 'languages', mapping logical names to OpenType language tags. Iterates though the languages in the selected font to check that it's a valid feature choice, and then prepends the (X\pi TEX)\font feature string with the appropriate language selection tag.

```
546 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontlanguage {mm}
547 {
    \fontspec_new_lang:nn {#1} {#2}
548
    \fontspec_new_lang:nn {#2} {#2}
549
550 }
551 \keys_define:nn { fontspec } { Language .choice: }
552 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_new_lang:nn
553 {
554
    \keys_define:nn { fontspec } { Language / #1 .code:n =
       \fontspec_check_lang:nTF {#2}
555
556
557
         \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {#2}
```

```
558
                                   \int_set:Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
                         559
                                  }
                         560
                         561
                                   \@@_warning:nx {language-not-exist} {#1}
                         562
                                   \keys_set:nn { fontspec } { Language = Default }
                         563
                         564
                              }
                         565 }
\DeclareFontsExtensions dfont would never be uppercase, right?
                         566 \DeclareDocumentCommand \DeclareFontsExtensions {m}
                         567 {
                              \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist { #1 }
                         568
                             \tl_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist {~}
                         569
                         570 }
                         571 \DeclareFontsExtensions{.otf,.ttf,.OTF,.TTF,.ttc,.TTC,.dfont}
```

23.3 Programmer's interface

These functions are not used directly by fontspec when defining fonts; they are designed to be used by other packages who wish to do font-related things on top of fontspec itself.

Because I haven't fully explored how these functions will behave in practise, I am not giving them user-level names. As it becomes more clear which of these should be accessible by document writers, I'll open them up a little more.

All functions are defined assuming that the font to be queried is currently selected as a fontspec font. (I.e., via \fontspec or from a \newfontfamily macro or from \setmainfont and so on.)

```
\fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF Test whether the currently selected font has been loaded by fontspec.

572 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_fontspec_font: {TF,T,F}

573 {

574 \cs_if_exist:cTF {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:

575 }

\fontspec_if_aat_feature:nnTF Conditional to test if the currently selected font contains the AAT feature (#1,#2).
```

```
576 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_aat_feature:nn {TF,T,F}
577 {
578
     \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
579
       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
580
       \ensuremath{\mbox{00\_font\_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_00\_fontdef_tl} {\footspec_pt}}
581
       \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_atsui_bool
582
583
584
         \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string:nnTF {#1}{#2}
            \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
585
586
        }
587
        {
588
         \prg_return_false:
        }
589
590
      }
591
592
       \prg_return_false:
```

```
593
                            }
                       594 }
\fontspec_if_opentype:TF Test whether the currently selected font is an OpenType font. Always true for LuaTeX fonts.
                       595 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_opentype: {TF,T,F}
                       596 {
                       597
                           \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
                       598
                             599
                             \ensuremath{\ensuremath{\texttt{00}_font\_set:Nnn \l_fontspec\_font {\l_00_fontdef\_tl} {\fessize pt}}
                       600
                             \@@_set_font_type:
                       601
                       602
                             \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
                       603
                       604
                            {
                       605
                             \prg_return_false:
                       606
                            }
                       607 }
\fontspec_if_feature:nTF
                       Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType feature #1. E.g.:
                       \fontspec_if_feature:nTF {pnum} {True} {False} Returns false if the font is not loaded
                       by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
                       608 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_feature:n {TF,T,F}
                       609 {
                       610
                           \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
                       611
                            {
                             prop_get:cnN \{g_@@_ \f@family \_prop\} \{fontdef\} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
                       612
                             613
                       614
                             \@@_set_font_type:
                             \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
                       615
                       616
                               prop_get:cnN \{g_@@_ \f@family \_prop\} \{script-num\} \l_@@_tmp_tl
                       617
                               \int_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}
                       618
                       619
                               \prop_get:cnN \{g_@@_ \f@family \_prop\} \{lang-num\} \l_@@_tmp_tl
                       620
                               \int_set:Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}
                       621
                       622
                              623
                               624
                       625
                       626
                              \fontspec_check_ot_feat:nTF {#1} {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
                       627
                       628
                              {
                       629
                               \prg_return_false:
                       630
                              }
                       631
                            }
                       632
                       633
                             \prg_return_false:
                       634
                            }
                       635 }
```

\fontspec_if_feature:nnnTF Test whether the currently selected font with raw OpenType script tag #1 and raw OpenType language tag #2 contains the raw OpenType feature tag #3. E.g.: \fontspec_if_feature:nTF {latn} {ROM} {pnum} {Tr

```
Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
```

```
636 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_feature:nnn {TF,T,F}
637 {
638
    \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
639
       \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
640
       \@@_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
641
642
       \@@_set_font_type:
       \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
643
644
         \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {#1}
645
         \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {#2}
646
         \fontspec_check_ot_feat:nTF {#3} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
647
648
649
        { \prg_return_false: }
650
651
     { \prg_return_false: }
652 }
```

\fontspec_if_script:nTF

Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType script #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_script:nTF {latn} {True} {False} Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```
653 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_script:n {TF,T,F}
654 {
    \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
655
656
      657
      \ensuremath{\ensuremath{\texttt{00}_font\_set:Nnn \l_fontspec\_font {\l_00_fontdef\_tl} {\fessize pt}}
658
      \@@_set_font_type:
659
      \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
660
661
        \fontspec_check_script:nTF {#1} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
663
664
       { \prg_return_false: }
665
     }
     { \prg_return_false: }
666
667 }
```

\fontspec_if_language:nTF

Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_language:nTF {ROM} {True} {False}. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```
668 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_language:n {TF,T,F}
669 {
670
                            \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
671
                                          672
                                         \ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ens
673
                                         \@@_set_font_type:
674
                                          \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
675
676
                                                       677
```

```
680
                                                                       681
                                                                                           \fontspec_check_lang:nTF {#1} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
                                                                       683
                                                                                        { \prg_return_false: }
                                                                       684
                                                                       685
                                                                                   { \prg_return_false: }
                                                                       686 }
                                                                       Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #2 in
        \fontspec_if_language:nnTF
                                                                       script \ \#1. \ E.g.: \ \ \{cyrl\} \ \ \{SRB\} \ \ \{True\} \ \ \{False\}. \ Returns \ false
                                                                       if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
                                                                       687 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_language:nn {TF,T,F}
                                                                       688 {
                                                                                 \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
                                                                       689
                                                                       690
                                                                                      \label{lem:converse_general} $$ \operatorname{cnN} \{g_{0} \ f_{0} \ prop} \{fontdef} \ l_{0} - fontdef_tl $$
                                                                       691
                                                                                      \@@_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
                                                                       692
                                                                                      \@@_set_font_type:
                                                                       693
                                                                                      \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
                                                                       694
                                                                       695
                                                                                           \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_tl {#1}
                                                                       697
                                                                                           \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {#1}
                                                                       698
                                                                                           \fontspec_check_lang:nTF {#2} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
                                                                       700
                                                                                        { \prg_return_false: }
                                                                       701
                                                                       702
                                                                                   { \prg_return_false: }
                                                                       703 }
fontspec_if_current_script:nTF
                                                                       Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType script tag #1.
                                                                       704 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_current_script:n {TF,T,F}
                                                                       705 {
                                                                       706
                                                                                 \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
                                                                       707
                                                                       708
                                                                                      \ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ens
                                                                       709
                                                                       710
                                                                                      \@@_set_font_type:
                                                                       711
                                                                                      \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
                                                                       712
                                                                                           713
                                                                                           \str_if_eq:nVTF {#1} \l_@e_tmp_tl
                                                                       714
                                                                      715
                                                                                               {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
                                                                       716
                                                                       717
                                                                                        { \prg_return_false: }
                                                                       718
                                                                       719
                                                                                   { \prg_return_false: }
                                                                       720 }
                                                                       Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType language tag #1.
ntspec_if_current_language:nTF
```

\int_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}

 $\prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {script-tag} \l_fontspec_script_tl$

678 679

721 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_current_language:n {TF,T,F}

```
722 {
                          723
                               \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
                          724
                          725
                                 726
                                 \ensuremath{\verb{@Q_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_ee_fontdef_tl} {\fesize pt}}
                          727
                                 \@@_set_font_type:
                          728
                                 \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
                          729
                                   \prop_get:cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {lang-tag} \l_@@_tmp_tl
                          730
                                   \str_if_eq:nVTF {#1} \l_@e_tmp_tl
                          731
                                     {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
                          732
                          733
                          734
                                  { \prg_return_false: }
                          735
                          736
                                { \prg_return_false: }
                          737 }
\fontspec_set_family:Nnn #1 : family
                          #2 : fontspec features
                          #3: font name
                              Defines a new font family from given \langle features \rangle and \langle font \rangle, and stores the name in the
```

variable \(\langle family \rangle \). See the standard fontspec user commands for applications of this function.

We want to store the actual name of the font family within the $\langle family \rangle$ variable because the actual LATEX family name is automatically generated by fontspec and it's easier to keep it

Please use \fontspec_set_family: Nnn instead of \fontspec_select:nn, which may change in the future.

```
738 \cs_new: Nn \fontspec_set_family: Nnn
739 {
740
    \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl { #1 }
741 \fontspec_select:nn {#2}{#3}
742 \tl_set_eq:NN #1 \l_fontspec_family_tl
743 }
744 \cs_generate_variant: Nn \fontspec_set_family: Nnn {c}
745 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_set_fontface:NNnn
```

\fontspec_set_fontface:NNnn

```
746 {
747
   \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl { #1 }
748 \fontspec_select:nn {#3}{#4}
    \tl_set_eq:NN #1 \l_fontspec_font
750 \tl_set_eq:NN #2 \l_fontspec_family_tl
```

23.4 expl3 interface for font loading

```
752 \cs_set:Nn \@@_fontwrap:n { "#1" }
   Beginnings of an '13font', I guess:
753 \cs_if_free:NT \font_set_eq:NN
754 {
755 \cs_set_eq:NN \font_set_eq:NN \tex_let:D
```

```
759
                                 760
                                      \cs_set:Npn \font_gset:Nnn #1#2#3
                                 761
                                 762
                                       \global \font #1 = #2 ~at~ #3 \scan_stop:
                                 763
                                      }
                                     \cs_set:Npn \font_suppress_not_found_error:
                                 764
                                              {\suppressfontnotfounderror=1}
                                 765 (xetexx)
                                               {\luatexsuppressfontnotfounderror=1}
                                 766 (luatex)
                                     \prg_set_conditional:Nnn \@@_font_if_null:N {p,TF,T,F}
                                 768
                                        \ifx #1 \nullfont
                                 769
                                 770
                                         \prg_return_true:
                                 771
                                          \prg_return_false:
                                 772
                                 773
                                        \fi
                                 774
                                       }
                                 775 }
pec_set:Nnn,\fontspec_gset:Nnn Wrapper around \font_set:Nnn and \font_gset:Nnn.
                                 776\cs_new:Nn \@@_font_set:Nnn
                                 777 {
                                     \font_set:Nnn #1 {\@@_fontwrap:n {#2}} {#3}
                                 778
                                 779 }
                                 780 \cs_new:Nn \@@_font_gset:Nnn
                                     \font_gset:Nnn #1 {\@@_fontwrap:n {#2}} {#3}
     \font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF
                                 784 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \font_glyph_if_exist:Nn {p,TF,T,F}
                                 785 {
                                 786
                                     \etex_iffontchar:D #1 #2 \scan_stop:
                                 787
                                       \prg_return_true:
                                 788 \else:
                                 789
                                       \prg_return_false:
                                    \fi:
                                 790
                                 791 }
```

\cs_set:Npn \font_set:Nnn #1#2#3

\font #1 = #2 ~at~ #3\scan_stop:

756

757

758

23.5 Internal macros

The macros from here in are used internally by all those defined above. They are not designed to remain consistent between versions.

 $\fontspec_select:nn$

This is the command that defines font families for use, the underlying procedure of all \fontspec -like commands. Given a list of font features (#1) for a requested font (#2), it will define an NFSS family for that font and put the family name (globally) into \footspec_family_tl . The TEX '\font' command is (globally) stored in \l_fontspec_font.

This macro does its processing inside a group to attempt to restrict the scope of its internal processing. This works to some degree to insulate the internal commands from having to be manually cleared.

Some often-used variables to know about:

- \l_fontspec_fontname_tl is used as the generic name of the font being defined.
- \l_@@_fontid_tl is the unique identifier of the font with all its features.
- \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl is the font specifically to be used as the upright font.
- \1_@@_basename_tl is the (immutable) original argument used for *-replacing.
- \l_fontspec_font is the plain TeX font of the upright font requested.

```
792 \cs_set:Nn \fontspec_select:nn
                                 793 {
                                 794
                                     \group_begin:
                                     \font_suppress_not_found_error:
                                 795
                                     \@@_init:
                                 796
                                 797
                                                                             {#2}
                                     \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
                                 798
                                 799
                                     \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl {#2}
                                     \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_basename_tl
                                                                             {#2}
                                 800
                                     \@@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {#2}
                                 802
                                 803
                                     \@@_extract_all_features:n {#1}
                                 804
                                     \@@_preparse_features:
                                 805
                                     \@@_load_font:
                                 806
                                 807
                                     \@@_set_scriptlang:
                                      \@@_get_features:Nn \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist {}
                                 808
                                 809
                                      \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
                                      \@@_save_family:nTF {#2}
                                 811
                                 812
                                      {
                                 813
                                        \@@_save_fontinfo:
                                 814
                                        \@@_find_autofonts:
                                        815
                                        \@@_set_faces:
                                 816
                                        \@@_info:nxx {defining-font} {#1} {#2}
                                 817
                                 818 (*debug)
                                        \typeout{"\l_@@_fontid_tl" defined.}
                                 819
                                        \@@_warning:nxx {defining-font} {#1} {#2}
                                 820
                                 821 (/debug)
                                 822
                                      }
                                 823
                                 824 \langle *debug \rangle
                                        \label{local-continuity} $$ \typeout{"\l_@@_fontid_tl"^ already^ defined^ apparently.}$
                                 826 \langle /debug \rangle
                                 827
                                 828
                                     \group_end:
                                 829 }
@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn Load a possible . fontspec font configuration file. This file could set font-specific options
                                 for the font about to be loaded.
```

```
830 \cs_new: Nn \@@_load_external_fontoptions: Nn
832 \@@_sanitise_fontname:Nn #1 {#2}
```

```
\tl_set:Nx \l_@@_ext_filename_tl {#1.fontspec}
                                                    833
                                                    834
                                                               \tl_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_ext_filename_tl {~}
                                                               \prop_if_in: NVF \q@@fontopts\_prop \#1
                                                    835
                                                    836
                                                    837
                                                                    \exp_args:No \file_if_exist:nT { \l_@@_ext_filename_tl }
                                                    838
                                                                      { \file_input:n { \l_@@_ext_filename_tl } }
                                                    839
                                                    840 }
  \@@_extract_features:
                                                    841 \cs_new:Nn \@@_extract_all_features:n
                                                    842 {
                                                    843
                                                               \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
                                                    844
                                                                    \clist_set:Nx \l_@@_all_features_clist {#1}
                                                    845
                                                    846
                                                                 }
                                                    847
                                                                  848
                                                                     { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_fontopts_clist }
                                                    849
                                                    850
                                                                  \prop_get:NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_family_label_tl \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist
                                                    851
                                                    852
                                                                     { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist }
                                                    853
                                                                    \tl_clear:N \l_@@_family_label_tl
                                                    854
                                                                    \clist_set:Nx \l_@@_all_features_clist
                                                    855
                                                    856
                                                                        \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist,
                                                    857
                                                                        \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist,
                                                    858
                                                                        \l_@@_fontopts_clist,
                                                    859
                                                                        #1
                                                    860
                                                    861
                                                                      }
                                                    862
                                                                 }
                                                            tl_set:Nx \l_@_fontid_tl { \tl_to_str:N \l_fontspec_fontname_tl-:-<math>tl_to_str:N \l_@_all_feature_tl_set:Nx \l_@_all_feature_tl_s
                                                              \typeout{fontid: \l_@@_fontid_tl}
                                                    866 (/debug)
                                                    867 }
                                                    #1: feature options
\@@_preparse_features:
                                                     #2: font name
                                                             Perform the (multi-step) feature parsing process.
                                                             Convert the requested features to font definition strings. First the features are parsed
                                                      for information about font loading (whether it's a named font or external font, etc.), and
                                                     then information is extracted for the names of the other shape fonts.
                                                    868 \cs_new:Nn \@@_preparse_features:
                                                    869 {
                                                     Detect if external fonts are to be used, possibly automatically, and parse fontspec features
                                                     for bold/italic fonts and their features.
                                                    870
                                                               \@@_if_detect_external:VT \l_@@_basename_tl
                                                    871
                                                                 { \keys_set:nn {fontspec-preparse-external} {ExternalLocation} }
                                                    872
```

```
\keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-preparse-external}
                            874
                                  { \l_@@_all_features_clist }
                                  \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
                            When \l_fontspec_fontname_tl is augmented with a prefix or whatever to create the name
                            of the upright font (\l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl), this latter is the new 'general font name'
                                 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl
                            876
                                 \keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-renderer} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist}
                            877
                                   878
                                 \keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-preparse} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist}
                            879
                                   \l_@@_fontfeat_clist
                            880
                            881 }
            \@@_load_font:
                            882 \cs_new:Nn \@@_load_font:
                            883 {
                                 \@@_font_set:Nnn
                                                     \label{local_local_spec_font} $$1_fontspec_font
                            884
                                   { \ensuremath{\mbox{@0_fullname:n {\l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl}} }  {\fesize pt}
                            885
                                886
                            887
                                 \@@_set_font_type:
                            888
                                \@@_font_gset:Nnn
                                                     \l_fontspec_font
                                    { \@@_fullname:n {\l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl} } {\f@size pt}
                            890 \l_fontspec_font % this is necessary for LuaLaTeX to check the scripts properly
\@@ if detect external:nnT
                            Check if either the fontname ends with a known font extension.
                            892 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_if_detect_external:n {T}
                            893 {
                                \clist_map_inline:Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist
                            894
                            895
                                   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tmpa_bool
                            896
                                   \tl_if_in:nnT {#1 <= end_of_string} {##1 <= end_of_string}</pre>
                            897
                            898
                                     { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_tmpa_bool \clist_map_break: }
                            899
                                 }
                                \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_tmpa_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
                            900
                            901 }
                            902 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_if_detect_external:nT {V}
            \@@_fullname:n Constructs the complete font name based on a common piece of info.
                            903 \cs_set:Nn \@@_fullname:n
                            904 {
                                 \@@_namewrap:n { #1 \l_@@_extension_tl }
                                \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
                            906
                                \l_@@_optical_size_tl
                            907
                            908 }
                            Only necessary for OpenType fonts. First check if the font supports scripts, then apply
       \@@_set_scriptlang:
                            defaults if none are explicitly requested. Similarly with the language settings.
                            909 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_scriptlang:
                            910 {
                            911 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
```

873

```
912
913
       \t1_if_empty:NTF \1_00_script_name_t1
914
915
         \fontspec_check_script:nTF {latn}
916
917
           \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_script_name_tl {Latin}
918
           \tl_if_empty:NT \l_@@_lang_name_tl
919
             \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_lang_name_tl {Default}
920
            }
921
           \keys_set:nx {fontspec} {Script=\l_@@_script_name_tl}
922
           \keys_set:nx {fontspec} {Language=\l_@@_lang_name_tl}
923
924
925
926
           \@@_info:n {no-scripts}
927
          }
928
        }
929
        {
         \t1_if_empty:NT \1_00_lang_name_tl
930
931
           \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_lang_name_tl {Default}
932
933
934
         \keys_set:nx {fontspec} {Script=\l_@@_script_name_tl}
935
         \keys_set:nx {fontspec} {Language=\l_@@_lang_name_tl}
936
937
938 }
```

\@@_save_family:nTF

956 957

{

Check if the family is unique and, if so, save its information. (\addfontfeature and other macros use this data.) Then the font family and its shapes are defined in the NFSS.

Now we have a unique (in fact, too unique!) string that contains the family name and every option in abbreviated form. This is used with a counter to create a simple NFSS family name for the font we're selecting.

```
939 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_save_family:n {TF}
940 {
941 \( debug \)\typeout\( save^ family: ~ #1 \)
942
     \cs_if_exist:NT \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl
943
944
        \cs_{eq:cN \{g_@Q_UID_\l_@Q_fontid_tl\} \l_@Q_nfss_fam_tl}
945
      }
     \cs_if_exist:cF \{g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl\}
946
947
      % The font name is fully expanded, in case it's defined in terms of macros, before having its space
948
949
       \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_tmp_tl {#1}
       \t! \tl_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_tmp_tl {~}
950
951
       \cs_if_exist:cTF \ \{g\_@Q\_family\_ \l_@Q\_tmp\_tl \ \_int\}
952
        { \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \left( \frac{g_0e_family_l_ee_tmp_tl_int}{2} \right) \\ \end{array} \right.}
953
954
                            {g_0e_family_ \l_ee_tmp_tl _int} }
        { \int_new:c
955
```

\tl_gset:cx {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl}

```
958
                                                                                                                                                                  \l_00_{tmp_tl} ( int_use:c \{g_00_family_ \l_00_tmp_tl _int \} )
                                                                                                                   959
                                                                                                                                                            }
                                                                                                                   960
                                                                                                                   961
                                                                                                                                              \tl_gset:Nv \l_fontspec_family_tl {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl}
                                                                                                                                             \cs_if_exist:cTF {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop}
                                                                                                                   963
                                                                                                                                                       \prg_return_false: \prg_return_true:
                                                                                                                   964 }
                                                                                                                  Saves the relevant font information for future processing.
\@@_save_fontinfo:nn
                                                                                                                   965 \cs_new: Nn \@@_save_fontinfo:
                                                                                                                   966 {
                                                                                                                   967
                                                                                                                                            \prop_new:c {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop}
                                                                                                                                         \displaystyle \operatorname{prop\_gput:cnx} \{g\_@Q\_ \land fontspec\_family\_tl\_prop\} \{fontname\} \{ \land f_@Q\_basename\_tl \}
                                                                                                                                          \displaystyle \operatorname{prop\_gput:cnx} \{g\_@Q\_ \\ 1\_fontspec\_family\_tl\_prop\} \{options\} \{ \\ 1\_@Q\_all\_features\_clist \}
                                                                                                                                            970
                                                                                                                   971
                                                                                                                   972
                                                                                                                                                       \@@_fullname:n {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} :
                                                                                                                                                       \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
                                                                                                                   973
                                                                                                                   974
                                                                                                                                                }
                                                                                                                                          \prop_gput:cnV {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} {script-num} \l_fontspec_script_int
                                                                                                                   975
                                                                                                                                          \label{lem:convergence} $$\operatorname{g_@Q_ \l_fontspec_family_tl \_prop} {\lang-num} \l_fontspec_language_int $$\label{lem:convergence} $$\operatorname{long-num} \label{longuage_int} $$\operatorname{long-num} \label{longuage} $$\operatorname{long-num} \label{longuage_int} $$\operatorname{long-num} \label{longuage_int} $$\operatorname{long-num} \label{longuage_int} $$\operatorname{long-num} \label{longuage} $$\operatorname{longuage} \label{longuage} $$\longuage} $$\longuage \label{longuage} $$\operatorname{longuage} \label{longuage} $$\longuage \label{longuage} $$\longuage \longuage} $$\longuage \longuage \longua
                                                                                                                   977
                                                                                                                                          \label{lem:convergence} $$\operatorname{g_@Q_ \l_fontspec\_family_tl \_prop} {\operatorname{script-tag} \l_fontspec\_script\_tl} $$
                                                                                                                                          \label{lem:condition} $$ \operatorname{g_@Q_ \l_fontspec_family_tl \_prop} {\lang-tag} \l_fontspec_lang_tl $$ $$ \end{tikzpicture} $$ \end{tikzpin
                                                                                                                   979
                                                                                                                   980 }
```

23.5.1 Setting font shapes in a family

All NFSS specifications take their default values, so if any of them are redefined, the shapes will be selected to fit in with the current state. For example, if \bfdefault is redefined to b, all bold shapes defined by this package will also be assigned to b.

The combination shapes are searched first because they use information that may be redefined in the single cases. E.g., if no bold font is specified then set_autofont will attempt to set it. This has subtle/small ramifications on the logic of choosing the bold italic font.

\@@_find_autofonts:

```
981 \cs_new:Nn \@@_find_autofonts:
982 {
983
                      \bool_if:nF {\l_@@_noit_bool || \l_@@_nobf_bool}
984
985
                            \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Non $\lower.Nn \lower.en}} \
                           \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{lambda}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\nbox{\sc Nn} \label}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\nbox{\sc Nn} \label{\nbox{\sc Nn} \label{\nbox{\sc Nn} \label}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\nbox{\sc Nn} \label{\nbox{\sc Nn} \label{\nbox{\sc Nn} \label{\nbox{\sc Nn} \label}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn} \labe
986
                           \@@_set_autofont:Nnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} {/BI}
987
988
                          }
989
990
                       \bool_if:NF \l_@@_nobf_bool
991
                           992
993
                          }
994
995
                      \bool_if:NF \l_@@_noit_bool
996
```

```
\ensuremath{\mbox{\sc deg-set_autofont:Nnn \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} {\l}} } \
                                           997
                                           998
                                                           }
                                           999
                                         1000
                                                       \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{lambda}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\nm}}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\nm}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\nm}}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\nm}}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Nn} \label{\mbox{
                                         1001 }
\@@_set_faces:
                                         1002 \cs new: Nn \@@ set faces:
                                         1003 {
                                         1004 \@@_add_nfssfont:oooo \mddefault \updefault \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist
                                         1005 \@@_add_nfssfont:oooo \bfdefault \updefault \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl \\l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist
                                         1006 \@@_add_nfssfont:oooo \mddefault \itdefault \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist
                                         \@@_add_nfssfont:oooo \bfdefault \itdefault \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clis
                                                       \@@_add_nfssfont:oooo \bfdefault \sldefault \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clis
                                         1009
                                         1010
                                         1011
                                                         \prop_map_inline:Nn \l_@@_nfssfont_prop { \@@_set_faces_aux:nnnnn ##2 }
                                         1012 }
                                         1013 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_faces_aux:nnnnn
                                         1014 {
                                                        \fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn \1_@@_curr_fontname_tl {#3}
                                         1015
                                         1016
                                                       \ensuremath{\mbox{@0_make\_font\_shapes:Nnnnn}} \label{lower_font_name_tl {#1} {#2} {#4} {#5}
                                         1017 }
```

23.5.2 Fonts

\@@_set_font_type:

Now check if the font is to be rendered with ATSUI or Harfbuzz. This will either be automatic (based on the font type), or specified by the user via a font feature.

This macro sets booleans accordingly depending if the font in \l_fontspec_font is an AAT font or an OpenType font or a font with feature axes (either AAT or Multiple Master), respectively.

```
1018 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_font_type:
1019 (*xetexx)
1020 {
1021
      \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tfm_bool
     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_atsui_bool
1022
     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_ot_bool
1023
     \bool_set_false:N \1_@@_mm_bool
1024
     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_graphite_bool
1025
1026
     \ifcase\XeTeXfonttype\l_fontspec_font
1027
        \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_tfm_bool
1028
     \or
        \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_atsui_bool
1029
        \ifnum\XeTeXcountvariations\l_fontspec_font > \c_zero
1030
          \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_mm_bool
1031
1032
        \fi
1033
     \or
        \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_ot_bool
1034
1035
```

If automatic, the \l_fontspec_renderer_tl token list will still be empty (other suffices that could be added will be later in the feature processing), and if it is indeed still empty, assign

it a value so that the other weights of the font are specifically loaded with the same renderer.

```
\tl_if_empty:NT \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
1036
1037
1038
        \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_atsui_bool
1039
         { \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_renderer_tl {/AAT} }
1040
            \bool_if:NT \l_@@_ot_bool
1041
1042
             { \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_renderer_tl {/OT} }
1043
         }
1044
       }
1045 }
1046 (/xetexx)
1047 (*luatex)
1048 {
      \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_ot_bool
1049
1050 }
1051 \langle /luatex \rangle
```

\@@_set_autofont:Nnn #1 : Font name tl

- #2: Base font name
- #3 : Font name modifier

This function looks for font with $\langle name \rangle$ and $\langle modifier \rangle$ #2#3, and if found (i.e., different to font with name #2) stores it in tl #1. A modifier is something like /B to look for a bold

We can't match external fonts in this way (in X_HT_EX anyway; todo: test with LuaTeX). If (font name tl) is not empty, then it's already been specified by the user so abort. If (Base font *name*\) is not given, we also abort for obvious reasons.

If $\langle font \ name \ tl \rangle$ is empty, then proceed. If not found, $\langle font \ name \ tl \rangle$ remains empty. Otherwise, we have a match.

```
1052 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_if_empty:nF {x}
1053 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_autofont:Nnn
1054 {
1055
                         \bool_if:NF \l_@@_external_bool
1056
1057
                         \tl_if_empty:xF {#2}
1058
1059
                                 \tl_if_empty:NT #1
1060
                                           \ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\sc 0}}}\ensuremath{\mbox{\sc 0}}\ensuremath{\mbox{\sc 0}}
1061
1062
                                              { \tl_set:Nx #1 {#2#3} }
                                               { \@@_info:nx {no-font-shape} {#2#3} }
1063
1064
1065
                            }
1066
                             }
1067 }
1068
1069 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \@@_if_autofont:nn {T,TF}
1070 {
                        1071
                        \ensuremath{\mbox{@0_font_set:Nnn \l_tmpb_font { \ensuremath{\mbox{@0_fullname:n {\#1\#2} } {\footspace pt}}}
1072
                        \str_if_eq_x:nnTF { \fontname \l_tmpa_font } { \fontname \l_tmpb_font }
1073
```

```
1074 { \prg_return_false: }
1075 { \prg_return_true: }
1076 }

\@@_make_font_shapes:\nnnn #1 : Font name
#2 : Font series
#3 : Font shape
#4 : Font features
#5 : Size features
```

This macro eventually uses \DeclareFontShape to define the font shape in question.

The optional first argument is used when making the font shapes for bold, italic, and bold italic fonts using X=T=X's auto-recognition with #2 as /B, /I, and /BI font name suffixes. If no such font is found, it falls back to the original font name, in which case this macro doesn't proceed and the font shape is not created for the NFSS.

Next, the small caps are defined. [...] is used to define the appropriate string for activating small caps in the font, if they exist. If we are defining small caps for the upright shape, then the small caps shape default is used. For an *italic* font, however, the shape parameter is overloaded and we must call italic small caps by their own identifier. See Section 23.7 on page 111 for the code that enables this usage.

```
1077 \cs_new:Nn \@@_make_font_shapes:Nnnnn
1078 {
1079
     \group_begin:
1080
        \@@_load_fontname:n {#1}
        \@@_declare_shape:nnxx {#2} {#3} { \l_@@_fontopts_clist, #4 } {#5}
1081
1082
     \group_end:
1083 }
1084
1085 \cs_new: Nn \@@_load_fontname:n
1086 {
1087
        \@@_load_external_fontoptions:Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {#1}
1088
       \prop_get:NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_@@_fontopts_clist
1089
        { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_fontopts_clist }
       \@@_font_set:Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\@@_fullname:n {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl}} {\f@size pt}
1090
       \@@_font_if_null:NT \l_fontspec_font { \@@_error:nx {font-not-found} {#1} }
1091
1092 }
```

Note that the test for italics to choose the \sidefault shape only works while $\footnote{fontspec_select:nn}$ passes single tokens to this macro...

\@@_declare_shape:nnnn

#1 : Font series#2 : Font shape#3 : Font features#4 : Size features

Wrapper for \DeclareFontShape. And finally the actual font shape declaration using \l_@@_nfss_tl defined above. \l_@@_postadjust_tl is defined in various places to deal with things like the hyphenation character and interword spacing.

The main part is to loop through SizeFeatures arguments, which are of the form SizeFeatures={{<one>},{<two>},{<three>}}.

```
1093 \cs_new:Nn \@@_declare_shape:nnnn
1094 {
1095 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_nfss_tl
1096 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl
```

```
\tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_saved_fontname_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
1097
1098
1099
      \exp_args:Nx \clist_map_inline:nn {#4}
1100
1101
        \tl_clear:N \l_@@_size_tl
1102
       tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_sizedfont_tl \l_@@_saved_fontname_tl \% in case not spec'ed \label{local_saved_fontname}
1103
1104
        \keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-sizing} { \exp_after:wN \use:n ##1 }
          \l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist
1105
        \tl_if_empty:NT \l_@@_size_tl { \@@_error:n {no-size-info} }
1106
1107
       % "normal"
1108
        \@@_load_fontname:n {\l_@@_sizedfont_tl}
1109
1110
        \ensuremath{\mbox{00\_setup\_nfss:Nnn }1_{\ensuremath{\mbox{00\_nfss\_tl }\{\mbox{\#3}\} }} 
1111
        % small caps
1112
        \clist_set_eq:NN \l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist
1113
1114
1115
        \bool_if:NF \l_@@_nosc_bool
1116
          \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_fontspec_fontname_sc_tl
1117
1118
1119 (debug)
                 \typeout{Attempting small caps?}
1120
            \@@_make_smallcaps:TF
1121
             {
1122 (debug)
                 \typeout{Small caps found.}
1123
              \clist_put_left:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist {Letters=SmallCaps}
1124
             }
             {
1125
1126 (debug)
                 \typeout{Small caps not found.}
              \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_nosc_bool
1127
1128
             }
1129
1130
         { \ensuremath{\mbox{@@\_load\_fontname:n {\l_fontspec\_fontname\_sc\_tl} }}\% \ local for each size}
1131
1132
        \bool_if:NF \l_@@_nosc_bool
1133
1134
          1135
         }
1136
1137
1138
1139
1140
      \@@_declare_shapes_normal:nn {#1} {#2}
      \@@_declare_shape_slanted:nn {#1} {#2}
1141
      \@@_declare_shape_loginfo:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
1142
1143 }
1144 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_declare_shape:nnnn {nnxx}
1146 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setup_nfss:Nnn
1147 {
```

```
\@@_get_features:Nn \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
1148
1149
      { #2 , \l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist , #3 }
1150
1151
      \tl_put_right:Nx #1
1152
1153
        <\l_@@_size_tl> \l_@@_scale_tl
1154
        \@@_fontwrap:n
1155
          \@@_fullname:n { \l_fontspec_fontname_tl }
1156
          : \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
1157
1158
         }
1159
      }
1160 }
1161
1162 \cs_new:Nn \@@_declare_shapes_normal:nn
1163 {
       \@@_DeclareFontShape:xxxxxx {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl} {\l_fontspec_family_tl}
1164
          {#1} {#2} {\l_@@_nfss_tl}{\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
1165
1166
        \bool_if:NF \l_@@_nosc_bool
1167
1168
        {
1169
        \@@_DeclareFontShape:xxxxxx {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl} {\l_fontspec_family_tl}
1170
            {\str_if_eq_x:nnTF {#2} {\itdefault} \sidefault \scdefault}
1171
1172
            {\l_00_nfss\_sc\_tl}{\l_00_postadjust\_tl}
1173
1174 }
1175
1176 \cs_new: Nn \@@_DeclareFontShape:nnnnnn
1177 {
1178
     \group_begin:
1179
        \normalsize
1180
        \cs_undefine:c {#1/#2/#3/#4/\f@size}
1181
     \group_end:
     \DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}
1183 }
1184 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_DeclareFontShape:nnnnnn {xxxxxxx}
```

This extra stuff for the slanted shape substitution is a little bit awkward. We define the slanted shape to be a synonym for it when (a) we're defining an italic font, but also (b) when the default slanted shape isn't 'it'. (Presumably this turned up once in a test and I realised it caused problems. I doubt this would happen much.)

We should test when a slanted font has been specified and not run this code if so, but the \@@_set_slanted: code will overwrite this anyway if necessary.

```
1185 \cs_new:Nn \@@_declare_shape_slanted:nn
1186 {
1187 \bool_if:nT
1188 {
1189 \str_if_eq_x_p:nn {#2} {\itdefault} &&
1190 !(\str_if_eq_x_p:nn {\itdefault} {\sldefault})
1191 }
1192 {
```

```
1194
                               {<->ssub*\l_fontspec_family_tl/#1/\itdefault}{\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
                     1195
                     1196 }
                      Lastly some informative messaging.
                     1197 \cs_new: Nn \@@_declare_shape_loginfo:nnn
                     1198 {
                           \tl_gput_right:Nx \l_fontspec_defined_shapes_tl
                     1199
                     1200
                            {
                             \exp_not:n { \\ \\ }
                     1201
                             * '\exp_not:N \str_case:nnF {#1/#2}
                     1202
                     1203
                     1204
                                {\mddefault/\updefault} {normal}
                     1205
                                {\bfdefault/\updefault} {bold}
                                {\mddefault/\itdefault} {italic}
                     1206
                     1207
                                {\bfdefault/\itdefault} {bold italic}
                     1208
                              } {#2/#3}'^
                             with NFSS spec.: \exp_not:N \\
                     1209
                             1210
                             \exp_not:n { \\ \\ }
                     1211
                             *~ '\exp_not:N \str_case:nnF {#1/\scdefault}
                     1212
                     1213
                              {
                                {\mddefault/\scdefault} {small caps}
                     1214
                     1215
                                {\bfdefault/\scdefault} {bold small caps}
                     1216
                                {\mddefault/\sidefault} {italic small caps}
                     1217
                                {\bfdefault/\sidefault} {bold italic small caps}
                     1218
                              } {#2/#3}'
                             with ^{\rm NFSS} spec.: \exp_not:N \\
                     1219
                             \l_{00\_nfss\_sc\_tl}
                     1220
                             \t1_if_empty:NF \1_00_postadjust_t1
                     1221
                     1222
                     1223
                              1224
                              }
                     1225
                            }
                     1226 }
\l_@e_pre_feat_sclist These are the features always applied to a font selection before other features.
                     1227 \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist
                     1228 (*xetexx)
                     1229 {
                           \verb|\bool_if:NT \l_@@\_ot_bool|
                     1230
                     1231
                            {
                             \tl_if_empty:NF \l_fontspec_script_tl
                     1232
                     1233
                              {
                               script = \l_fontspec_script_tl ;
                     1234
                               language = \l_fontspec_lang_tl
                     1235
                     1236
                              }
                     1237
                            }
                     1238 }
                     1239 (/xetexx)
                     1240 (*luatex)
```

1193

 $\label{local-problem} $$ \end{subarray} $$$ \end{subarray} $$ \end{subarray} $$ \end{subarray} $$ \end{subarray} $$ \end{subarray} $$$ \end{subarray} $$$ \end{subarray} $$ \end{subarray} $$ \end{subarray} $$$ \end$

23.5.3 Features

\@@_get_features:Nn

This macro is a wrapper for \keys_set:nn which expands and adds a default specification to the original passed options. It begins by initialising the commands used to hold font-feature specific strings. Its argument is any additional features to prepend to the default.

```
1250 \cs_set:Nn \@@_get_features:Nn
1251 {
1252
    \sclist_clear:N \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
    \tl_clear:N \l_@@_scale_tl
1253
     tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_opacity_tl \g_@@_opacity_tl
1254
     tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_hexcol_tl \g_@@_hexcol_tl
1255
1256
     tl_{eq:NN \l_@epostadjust_tl \g_@e_postadjust_tl} \
1257
     \tl_clear:N \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
1258
     \tl_clear:N \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
1259
     \keys_set_known:nxN {fontspec-renderer} {\l_@@_fontfeat_clist,#2}
1260
1261
       \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
     \keys_set:nx {fontspec} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist}
1262
```

Finish the colour specification. Do not set the colour if not explicitly spec'd else \color (using specials) will not work.

\@@_init: Initialisations that either need to occur globally: (all setting of these variables is done locally inside a group)

```
1271 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_family_label_tl
1272 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl
1273 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl
1274 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl
1275 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl
1276 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl
1277 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl
1278 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl
1279 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontname_sc_tl
1280 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist
```

```
1282 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist
                                                1283 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
                                                1284 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist
                                                1285 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist
                                                1286 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist
                                                1287 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_script_name_tl
                                                1288 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_script_tl
                                                1289 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_lang_name_tl
                                                1290 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_lang_tl
                                                1293 \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {Size={-}}
                                                1294 \tl_new:N \g_@@_hexcol_tl
                                                1295 \tl_new:N \g_@@_opacity_tl
                                                1296 \tl_set: Nn \g_@@_hexcol_tl {000000}
                                                1297 \tl_set:Nn \g_@@_opacity_tl {FF~}
                                                  Or once per fontspec font invocation: (Some of these may be redundant. Check whether
                                                  they're assigned to globally or not.)
                                                1298 \cs_set:Npn \@@_init:
                                                1299 {
                                                1300
                                                           \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_ot_bool
                                                1301
                                                            \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
                                                1302
                                                            \cs_set:Npn \@@_namewrap:n ##1 { ##1 }
                                                1303
                                                            \tl_clear:N \l_@@_optical_size_tl
                                                            \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
                                                1304
                                                            \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_defined_shapes_tl
                                                1305
                                                            \tl_clear:N \g_@@_curr_series_tl
                                                1306
                                                1307
                                                           % This is for detecting font families when assigning default features.
                                                1308
                                                1309
                                                           % Replace defaults for the standard families because they're not set in the usual way:
                                                1310
                                                           \exp_args:NV \str_case:nnF {\l_@@_family_label_tl}
                                                1311
                                                                {\bf \{\ndefault\} \ \{\ndefault\}
                                                1312
                                                                {\left\{ \cdot \right\} } { \tl_set:Nn \l_ee_family_label_tl {\g_ee_sffamily_family} }
                                                1313
                                                1314
                                                                {\tt \{\ttdefault\} \{ \tl\_set:Nn \l\_@e_family\_label\_tl \{\g_@e\_ttfamily\_family} \}}
                                                1315
                                                              }{}
                                                1316
                                                1317 (*luatex)
                                                            \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_mode_tl {node}
                                                            \luatexprehyphenchar = '\- % fixme
                                                1319
                                                                                                                          % fixme
                                                1320
                                                            \label{luatexposthyphenchar} \ = 0
                                                1321
                                                            \luatexpreexhyphenchar = 0
                                                                                                                          % fixme
                                                            \luatexpostexhyphenchar= 0
                                                1323 (/luatex)
                                                1324 }
\@@_make_smallcaps:TF This macro checks if the font contains small caps.
                                                1325 \cs_set:Nn \fontspec_make_ot_smallcaps:TF
                                                1326 {
                                                           \fontspec_check_ot_feat:nTF {+smcp} {#1} {#2}
```

1281 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist

```
1328 }
1329 \langle *xetexx \rangle
1330 \cs_set:Nn \@@_make_smallcaps:TF
1331 {
1332
      \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
1333
       { \fontspec_make_ot_smallcaps:TF {#1} {#2} }
1334
1335
         \bool_if:NT \l_@@_atsui_bool
1336
          { \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string:nnTF {3}{3} {#1} {#2} }
1337
       }
1338 }
1339 (/xetexx)
1340 (*luatex)
1341 \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_make_smallcaps:TF \fontspec_make_ot_smallcaps:TF
1342 (/luatex)
```

\sclist_put_right:Nn I'm hardly going to write an 'sclist' module but a couple of functions are useful. Here, items in semi-colon lists are always followed by a semi-colon (as opposed to the s.-c's being placed between elements) so we can append sclists without worrying about it.

```
1343 \cs_set_eq:NN \sclist_clear:N \tl_clear:N
1344 \cs_new:Nn \sclist_gput_right:Nn
1345 { \tl_gput_right:Nn #1 {#2;} }
1346 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \sclist_gput_right:Nn {Nx}
```

\@@_update_featstr:n \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist is the string used to define the list of specific font features. Each time another font feature is requested, this macro is used to add that feature to the list. Font features are separated by semicolons.

```
1347 \cs_new: Nn \@@_update_featstr:n
1348 {
1349    \bool_if: NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1350    {
1351    \sclist_gput_right: Nx \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist {#1}
1352    }
1353 }
```

\fontspec_make_feature:nnn This macro is called by each feature key selected, and runs according to which type of font is selected.

```
1354 \verb|\cs_new:Nn \fontspec_make_feature:nnn|
1355 (*xetexx)
1356 {
      \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
1357
       { \fontspec_make_OT_feature:n {#3} }
1358
1359
         \bool_if:NT \l_@@_atsui_bool
1360
          { \fontspec_make_AAT_feature:nn {#1}{#2} }
1361
1362
       }
1363 }
1364 (/xetexx)
1365 (*luatex)
1366 { \fontspec_make_OT_feature:n {#3} }
1367 (/luatex)
1368 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \fontspec_make_feature:nnn {nnx}
```

```
1369 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_make_AAT_feature:nn
                                 1370 {
                                 1371
                                       \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
                                        { \@@_warning:n {aat-feature-not-exist} }
                                 1372
                                 1373
                                 1374
                                          \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string:nnTF {#1}{#2}
                                 1375
                                 1376
                                            \@@_update_featstr:n {\l_fontspec_feature_string_tl}
                                          }
                                 1377
                                          { \@@_warning:nx {aat-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1,#2} }
                                 1378
                                 1379
                                        }
                                 1380 }
                                 1381 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_make_OT_feature:n
                                 1382 {
                                       \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
                                        { \@@_warning:n {icu-feature-not-exist} }
                                 1384
                                 1385
                                 1386
                                          \fontspec_check_ot_feat:nTF {#1}
                                 1387
                                            \@@_update_featstr:n {#1}
                                 1388
                                 1389
                                 1390
                                           { \@@_warning:nx {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1} }
                                 1391
                                 1392 }
                                 1393 \cs_new_protected:Nn \fontspec_make_numbered_feature:nn
                                 1394 {
                                       \fontspec_check_ot_feat:nTF {#1}
                                 1395
                                 1396
                                       {
                                         \@@_update_featstr:n { #1 = #2 }
                                 1397
                                        }
                                 1398
                                        { \@@_warning:nx {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1} }
                                 1399
                                 1400 }
                                 1401 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \fontspec_make_numbered_feature:nn {xn}
     \@@_define_font_feature:n These macros are used in order to simplify font feature definition later on.
@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn _{1402\,\cs_new:Nn}\ensuremath{\columnwdef}
\verb|spec_define_numbered_feat:nnnn||_{1403} \ \{
                                       \keys_define:nn {fontspec} { #1 .multichoice: }
                                 1405 }
                                 1406 \cs_new:Nn \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn
                                 1407 {
                                       \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
                                 1408
                                 1409
                                         #1/#2 .code:n = { \fontspec_make_feature:nnn{#3}{#4}{#5} }
                                 1410
                                        }
                                 1411
                                 1412 }
                                 1413 \verb|\cs_new:Nn \fontspec_define_numbered_feat:nnnn|
                                 1414 {
                                       \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
                                 1415
                                 1416
                                         #1/#2 .code:n =
                                 1417
                                 1418
                                           { \fontspec_make_numbered_feature:nn {#3}{#4} }
```

```
1419 }
1420 }
```

c_make_AAT_feature_string:nnTF

This macro takes the numerical codes for a font feature and creates a specified macro containing the string required in the font definition to turn that feature on or off. Used primarily in [...], but also used to check if small caps exists in the requested font (see page 81).

For exclusive selectors, it's easy; just grab the string: For *non*-exclusive selectors, it's a little more complex. If the selector is even, it corresponds to switching the feature on. If the selector is *odd*, it corresponds to switching the feature off. But XaTeX doesn't return a selector string for this number, since the feature is defined for the 'switching on' value. So we need to check the selector of the previous number, and then prefix the feature string with! to denote the switch.

Finally, save out the complete feature string in \l_fontspec_feature_string_tl.

```
1421 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string:nn {TF,T,F}
1422 {
1423
     \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpa_tl { \XeTeXfeaturename \l_fontspec_font #1 }
      \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_tmpa_tl
1424
       { \prg_return_false: }
1425
1426
       {
        \int_compare:nTF { \XeTeXisexclusivefeature\l_fontspec_font #1 > 0 }
1427
1428
1429
          \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl {\XeTeXselectorname\l_fontspec_font #1\space #2}
         }
1430
1431
         {
          \int_if_even:nTF {#2}
1432
1433
           \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl {\XeTeXselectorname\l_fontspec_font #1\space #2}
1434
1435
           }
1436
           {
1437
            \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl
1438
1439
              \XeTeXselectorname\l_fontspec_font #1\space \numexpr#2-1\relax
1440
            \tl_if_empty:NF \l_tmpb_tl { \tl_put_left:Nn \l_tmpb_tl {!} }
1441
1442
1443
        \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_tmpb_tl
1444
        { \prg_return_false: }
1445
1446
1447
          \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_feature_string_tl { \l_tmpa_tl = \l_tmpb_tl }
1448
          \prg_return_true:
1449
         }
1450
       }
```

\fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn \fontspec_v_str_to_num:Nn This macro takes a four character string and converts it to the numerical representation required for X_TT_EX OpenType script/language/feature purposes. The output is stored in \l_fontspec_strnum_int.

The reason it's ugly is because the input can be of the form of any of these: 'abcd', 'abc', 'abc', 'abc', 'ab', 'ab', 'etc. (It is assumed the first two chars are *always* not spaces.) So this macro reads in the string, delimited by a space; this input is padded with \@emptys and anything

beyond four chars is snipped. The $\ensuremath{\texttt{Qemptys}}$ then are used to reconstruct the spaces in the string to number calculation.

The variant \fontspec_v_str_to_num:n is used when looking at features, which are passed around with prepended plus and minus signs (e.g., +liga, -dlig); it simply strips off the first char of the input before calling the normal \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:n.

```
1452 \cs_set:Nn \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn
1453 {
1454 \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:w #1 \q_nil #2 \c_empty_tl \c_empty_tl \q_nil
1455 }
1456 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:w #1 \q_nil #2#3#4#5#6 \q_nil
1457 {
     \int_set:Nn #1
1458
1459
       {
          '#2 * "1000000
1460
        + '#3 * "10000
1461
       + \ifx \c_empty_tl #4 32 \else '#4 \fi * "100
1462
1463
       + \ifx \c_empty_tl #5 32 \else '#5 \fi
1464
1465 }
1466 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn {No}
1467 \verb|\cs_set:Nn \\ \verb|\fontspec_v_str_to_num:Nn \\
1468 {
1469
     \bool_if:nTF
1470
        \tl_if_head_eq_charcode_p:nN {#2} {+} ||
1471
       \tl_if_head_eq_charcode_p:nN {#2} {-}
1472
1473
       }
1474
      { \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:No #1 { \use_none:n #2 } }
1475
       { \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn #1 {#2} }
1476 }
```

\fontspec_check_script:nTF

This macro takes an OpenType script tag and checks if it exists in the current font. The output boolean is \@tempswatrue. \l_fontspec_strnum_int is used to store the number corresponding to the script tag string.

```
1477 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_check_script:n {TF}
1478 (*xetexx)
1479 {
      \label{lem:num:Nn l_fontspec_strnum_int {#1}} $$ \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_fontspec_strnum_int {#1}
1480
      \int_set:Nn \l_tmpb_int { \XeTeXOTcountscripts \l_fontspec_font }
1481
      \int_zero:N \l_tmpa_int
1482
1483
      \@tempswafalse
1484
      \bool_until_do:nn { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
1485
       \ifnum \XeTeXOTscripttag\l_fontspec_font \l_tmpa_int = \l_fontspec_strnum_int
1486
1487
           \@tempswatrue
           \int_set:Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
1488
        \else
1489
1490
           \int_incr:N \l_tmpa_int
        \fi
1491
1492
       }
      \if@tempswa \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
1493
```

```
1494 }
                               1495 (/xetexx)
                               1496 (*luatex)
                               1497 {
                                     \directlua{fontspec.check_ot_script("l_fontspec_font", "#1")}
                                     \if@tempswa \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
                               1501 \langle /luatex \rangle
   \fontspec_check_lang:nTF
                                This macro takes an OpenType language tag and checks if it exists in the current font/script.
                                The output boolean is \@tempswatrue. \l_fontspec_strnum_int is used to store the num-
                                ber corresponding to the language tag string. The script used is whatever's held in
                                \l_fontspec_script_int. By default, that's the number corresponding to 'latn'.
                               1502\prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_check_lang:n {TF}
                               1503 (*xetexx)
                               1504 {
                               1505
                                     \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_fontspec_strnum_int {#1}
                               1506
                                     \int_set:Nn \l_tmpb_int
                                      { \XeTeXOTcountlanguages \l_fontspec_font \l_fontspec_script_int }
                               1507
                               1508
                                     \int_zero:N \l_tmpa_int
                                     \@tempswafalse
                               1509
                                     \bool_until_do:nn { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
                               1510
                               1511
                               1512
                                      \ifnum\XeTeXOTlanguagetag\l_fontspec_font\l_fontspec_script_int \l_tmpa_int =\l_fontspec_strnum.
                               1513
                                          \@tempswatrue
                               1514
                                          \int_set:Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
                               1515
                                       \else
                                          \int_incr:N \l_tmpa_int
                               1516
                               1517
                               1518
                                     \if@tempswa \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
                               1519
                               1520 }
                               1521 \langle / xetexx \rangle
                               1522 (*luatex)
                               1523 {
                               1524
                                     \directlua
                               1525
                                      fontspec.check_ot_lang( "l_fontspec_font", "#1", "\l_fontspec_script_tl" )
                               1526
                               1527
                                    \if@tempswa \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
                               1528
                               1529 }
                               1530 \langle /luatex \rangle
                                This macro takes an OpenType feature tag and checks if it exists in the current font/script/language.
\fontspec_check_ot_feat:nTF
                                The output boolean is \@tempswa. \l_fontspec_strnum_int is used to store the number corre-
 \fontspec_check_ot_feat:nT
                                sponding to the feature tag string. The script used is whatever's held in \l_fontspec_script_int.
                                By default, that's the number corresponding to 'latn'. The language used is \l_fontspec_language_int,
                                by default 0, the 'default language'.
                               1531 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_check_ot_feat:n {TF,T}
                               1532 (*xetexx)
                               1533 {
```

\int_set:Nn \l_tmpb_int

```
1535
                           \XeTeXOTcountfeatures \l_fontspec_font
1536
1537
                                                                                                            \l_fontspec_script_int
1538
                                                                                                            \label{local_local_local_local_local} $$1_fontspec_language_int
1539
1540
                    \fontspec_v_str_to_num:Nn \l_fontspec_strnum_int {#1}
1541
                    \int_zero:N \l_tmpa_int
                    \@tempswafalse
1542
                    \bool_until_do:nn { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
1543
1544
                        \verb|\ifnum\\XeTeXOTfeaturetag\\l_fontspec_font\\l_fontspec_script_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_language\_int\\l_fontspec_
1545
                                              \l_tmpa_int =\l_fontspec_strnum_int
1546
1547
                                   \@tempswatrue
1548
                                   1549
                                   \int_incr:N \l_tmpa_int
1550
                           \fi
1551
1552
                       }
1553
                    \if@tempswa \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
1554 }
1555 (/xetexx)
1556 (*luatex)
1557 {
1558
                    \directlua
1559
                       {
                           fontspec.check_ot_feat(
1560
                                                                                                                 "l_fontspec_font", "#1",
1561
                                                                                                                 "\l_fontspec_lang_tl", "\l_fontspec_script_tl"
1562
                                                                                                            )
1563
1564
                   \if@tempswa \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
1565
1566 }
1567 \langle /luatex \rangle
```

23.6 keyval definitions

This is the tedious section where we correlate all possible (eventually) font feature requests with their XaTeX representations.

```
1568 \cs_new:\Nn \@@_keys_define_code:nnn
1569 {
1570 \keys_define:nn {#1} { #2 .code:n = {#3} }
1571 }
```

23.6.1 Pre-parsing naming information

These features are extracted from the font feature list before all others.

ExternalLocation For fonts that aren't installed in the system. If no argument is given, the font is located with kpsewhich; it's either in the current directory or the TEX tree. Otherwise, the argument given defines the file path of the font.

```
1572 \bool_new:N \l_@@_external_bool
```

```
1573 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {ExternalLocation}
1574 {
1575   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
1576   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_noit_bool
1577   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_external_bool
1578   \cs_gset:Npn \@@_namewrap:n ##1 { [ #1 ##1 ] }
1579 \{\text{xetexx}\}
1580   \keys_set:nn {fontspec-renderer} {Renderer=OpenType}
1581 \(\frac{\text{xetexx}\}{\text{setexx}\}}
1582   }
1583 \aliasfontfeature{ExternalLocation}{Path}
```

Extension For fonts that aren't installed in the system. Specifies the font extension to use.

23.6.2 Pre-parsed features

After the font name(s) have been sorted out, now need to extract any renderer/font configuration features that need to be processed before all other font features.

Renderer This feature must be processed before all others (the other font shape and features options are also pre-parsed for convenience) because the renderer determines the format of the features and even whether certain features are available.

```
1593 \keys_define:nn {fontspec-renderer}
1594 {
     Renderer .choices:nn =
1595
1596
       {AAT,ICU,OpenType,Graphite,Full,Basic}
1597
        \int_compare:nTF {\l_keys_choice_int <= 4} {</pre>
1598
1599 (*xetexx)
          \tl_set:Nv \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
1600
             { g_fontspec_renderer_tag_ \l_keys_choice_tl }
1601
1602 (/xetexx)
1603 (*luatex)
1604
          \@@_warning:nx {only-xetex-feature} {Renderer=AAT/OpenType/Graphite}
1605 (/luatex)
1606
         }
1607
         {
1608 (*xetexx)
          \@@_warning:nx {only-luatex-feature} {Renderer=Full/Basic}
1609
1610 \langle /xetexx \rangle
1611 (*luatex)
1612
          \tl_set:Nv \l_fontspec_mode_tl
```

OpenType script/language See later for the resolutions from fontspec features to Open-Type definitions.

```
1624 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {Script}
1625 {
1626 \( \times \text{keys_set:nn } \text{fontspec-renderer} \) {Renderer=OpenType}
1627 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_script_name_tl \{#1\}
1628 \}
Exactly the same:
1629 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn \{fontspec-preparse\} \{Language\}
1630 \{
1631 \( \times \text{keys_set:nn } \text{fontspec-renderer} \) {Renderer=OpenType\}
1632 \\ \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_lang_name_tl \{#1\}
1633 \}
```

23.6.3 Bold/italic choosing options

The Bold, Italic, and BoldItalic features are for defining explicitly the bold and italic fonts used in a font family.

Bold (NFSS) Series By default, fontspec uses the default bold series, \bfdefault. We want to be able to make this extensible.

```
1634 \seq_new:N \g_@@_bf_series_seq
1635 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldSeries}
1636 {
1637 \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_curr_series_tl { #1 }
1638 \seq_gput_right:Nx \g_@@_bf_series_seq { #1 }
1639 }
```

Fonts Upright:

```
1640 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {UprightFont}
1641 {
1642 \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl {#1}
1643 }
1644 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {FontName}
1645 {
1646 \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl {#1}
1647 }
```

```
Bold:
1648 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_if_eq:nnT {ox}
1649 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_put:Nnn {NxV}
1650 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldFont}
1651 {
     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
1652
1653
      {
1654
       \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
1655
      }
1656
       \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
1657
       \fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl {#1}
1658
1659
       \seq_if_empty:NT \g_@@_bf_series_seq
1660
1661
        {
         \tl_gset:Nx \g_@@_curr_series_tl {\bfdefault}
1662
1663
         \seq_put_right:Nx \g_@@_bf_series_seq {\bfdefault}
1664
       \tl_if_eq:oxT \g_@@_curr_series_tl {\bfdefault}
1665
        { \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl }
1666
1667
1669
1670
       \prop_put:NxV \l_@@_nfss_prop
1671
        {BoldFont-\g_@@_curr_series_tl} \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl
1672
1673
      }
1674 }
1675 \prop_new:N \l_@@_nfss_prop
Same for italic:
1676 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {ItalicFont}
1677 {
1678
     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
1679
      {
       \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_noit_bool
1680
      }
1681
1682
       \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_noit_bool
1683
       \fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl {#1}
1684
1685
      }
1686 }
Simpler for bold+italic & slanted:
1687 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldItalicFont}
1688 {
     \fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl {#1}
1689
1690 }
1691 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {SlantedFont}
1692 {
    \fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl {#1}
1693
1694 }
```

```
1695 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldSlantedFont}
                                1696 {
                                1697
                                      \fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl {#1}
                                1698 }
                                 Small caps isn't pre-parsed because it can vary with others above:
                                1699 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {SmallCapsFont}
                                1700 {
                                      \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
                                1701
                                1702
                                       {
                                1703
                                        \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_nosc_bool
                                1704
                                       }
                                1705
                                1706
                                        \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_nosc_bool
                                1707
                                        \fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_sc_tl {#1}
                                1708
                                       }
                                1709 }
\fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn This macro defines #1 as the input with any * tokens of its input replaced by the font name.
                                 This lets us define supplementary fonts in full ("Baskerville Semibold") or in abbreviation
                                 ("* Semibold").
                                1710 \cs_set:Nn \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn
                                1711 {
                                1712
                                      \tl_set:Nx #1 {#2}
                                     \tl_replace_all:Nnx #1 {*} {\l_@@_basename_tl}
                                1714 (luatex) \tl_remove_all:Nn #1 {~}
                                1716 \cs_generate_variant: Nn \tl_replace_all: Nnn {Nnx}
                                 Features
                                1717 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {UprightFeatures}
                                1718 {
                                     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist {#1}
                                1719
                                1720 }
                                1721 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {BoldFeatures}
                                1722 {
                                1723
                                      \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist {#1}
                                1724
                                       \prop_put:NxV \l_@@_nfss_prop
                                1725 %
                                          {BoldFont-\g_@@_curr_series_tl} \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl
                                1726 %
                                1727 }
                                1728 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {ItalicFeatures}
                                1729 {
                                     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist {#1}
                                1730
                                1731 }
                                1732 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {BoldItalicFeatures}
                                1733 {
                                      \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {#1}
                                1734
                                1735 }
                                1736 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {SlantedFeatures}
```

1738 \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist {#1}

```
1739 }
1740 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {BoldSlantedFeatures}
1741 {
1742
     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist {#1}
1743 }
 Note that small caps features can vary by shape, so these in fact aren't pre-parsed.
1744 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {SmallCapsFeatures}
1745 {
     \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1746
1747
        \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist {#1}
1748
1749
       }
1750 }
    paragraphFeatures varying by size
1751 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {SizeFeatures}
1752 {
1753 \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {#1}
1754 \cdot \text{clist\_put\_right:Nn } l_@@_fontfeat\_up\_clist { SizeFeatures = {#1} }
1755 }
1756 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-nested} {SizeFeatures}
1757 {
     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {#1}
     \tl_if_empty:NT \l_@@_this_font_tl
     { \t = \{ tl_set: Nn \t = 0, tl_e_t = 0, tl_e_t \} } % needs to be non-empty as a flag
1760
1761 }
1762 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-nested} {Font}
1763 {
1764 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_this_font_tl {#1}
1766 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {SizeFeatures}
1767 {
1768 % dummy
1770 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Font}
1771 {
1772 % dummy
1773 }
1774 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-sizing} {Size}
1775 {
1776 \t l_set:Nn \l_@@_size_tl \{#1}
1777 }
1778 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-sizing} {Font}
1780 \fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn \l_@@_sizedfont_tl {#1}
1781 }
```

23.6.4 Font-independent features

These features can be applied to any font.

NFSS family Interactions with other packages will sometimes require setting the NFSS family explicitly. (By default fontspec auto-generates one based on the font name.)

```
1782 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {NFSSFamily}
1783 {
1784 \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl { #1 }
1785 \cs_undefine:c {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl}
1786 \tl_if_exist:NT \l_fontspec_family_tl
1787 { \cs_undefine:c {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} }
1788 }
```

NFSS series/shape This option looks similar in name but has a very different function.

```
1789 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_put:Nnn {Nxx}
                                                             1790 \prop_new:N \l_@@_nfssfont_prop
                                                             1791 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {FontFace}
                                                             1792 {
                                                                            \tl_set:No \l_@@_arg_tl { \use_iii:nnn #1 }
                                                             1793
                                                             1794
                                                                            \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_this_feat_tl \l_@@_arg_tl
                                                                             \tl_clear:N \l_@@_this_font_tl
                                                                            \int_compare:nT { \clist_count:N \l_@@_arg_tl = 1 }
                                                             1797
                                                             1798 (*debug)
                                                                                   \typeout{FontFace parsing: one clist item}
                                                             1799
                                                             1800 (/debug)
                                                                                  \tl_if_in:NnF \l_@@_arg_tl {=}
                                                             1801
                                                             1802
                                                             1803 (*debug)
                                                                                         \typeout{FontFace parsing: no equals => font name only}
                                                             1804
                                                             1805 (/debug)
                                                             1806
                                                                                         tl_set_eq:NN \l_@e_this_font_tl \l_@e_arg_tl
                                                             1807
                                                                                         \tl_clear:N \l_@@_this_feat_tl
                                                             1808
                                                                                     }
                                                                                }
                                                             1809
                                                             1810
                                                                             \@@_add_nfssfont:oooo
                                                             1811
                                                                                {\use_i:nnn \#1}_{\use_i:nnn \#1}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\location}_{\locati
                                                             1812
                                                             1813 }
\@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn #1 : series
                                                                 #2 : shape
                                                                 #3: fontname
                                                                 #4 : fontspec features
                                                             1814 \cs_new:Nn \@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn
                                                             1815 {
                                                                            \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_this_font_tl {#3}
                                                             1816
                                                             1817
                                                                            \tl_if_empty:xTF {#4}
                                                             1818
                                                                               { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {Size={-}} }
                                                             1819
                                                             1820
                                                                                { \keys_set_known:noN {fontspec-preparse-nested} {#4} \l_@@_tmp_tl }
                                                             1821
                                                             1822
                                                                             \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_this_font_tl
                                                              1823
                                                                               {
```

```
1824 \prop_put:Nxx \l_@@_nfssfont_prop {#1/#2}
1825 { #1}{#2}{\l_@@_this_font_tl}{#4}{\l_@@_sizefeat_clist} }
1826 }
1827 }
1828 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn {ooo}
1829 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_add_nfssfont:nnnn {oooo}
1830 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_if_empty:nTF {x}
```

Scale If the input isn't one of the pre-defined string options, then it's gotta be numerical. \fontspec_calc_scale:n does all the work in the auto-scaling cases.

\@@_calc_scale:n

This macro calculates the amount of scaling between the default roman font and the (default shape of) the font being selected such that the font dimension that is input is equal for both. The only font dimensions that justify this are 5 (lowercase height) and 8 (uppercase height in $X_{\overline{A}}T_{\overline{b}}X$).

This script is executed for every extra shape, which seems wasteful, but allows alternate italic shapes from a separate font, say, to be loaded and to be auto-scaled correctly. Even if this would be ugly.

```
1841 \cs_new:Nn \@@_calc_scale:n
1842 {
1843
                                          \group_begin:
1844
                                                        \rmfamily
                                                        \ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\sc NnN $\l$_@e_tmpa_dim $\{\#1\}$ \font}}
1845
                                                         \ensuremath{\mbox{@@\_set\_font\_dimen:NnN }l_{\ensuremath{\mbox{@Q\_tmpb\_dim }}} \label{lem:nnN} \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}} \label{lem:nnN} \ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}} \ensure
1846
                                                        \tl_gset:Nx \l_@@_scale_tl
1847
 1848
                                                               {
                                                                        \fp_eval:n { \dim_to_fp:n {\l_@@_tmpa_dim} /
 1849
                                                                                                                                                                        1850
1851
1852
                                                        \@@_info:n {set-scale}
1853
                                          \group_end:
1854 }
```

 $\@_set_font_dimen:NnN$

This function sets the dimension #1 (for font #3) to 'fontdimen' #2 for either font dimension 5 (x-height) or 8 (cap-height). If, for some reason, these return an incorrect 'zero' value (as \fontdimen8 might for a .tfm font), then we cheat and measure the height of a glyph. We assume in this case that the font contains either an 'X' or an 'X'.

```
1855 \cs_new:Nn \@@_set_font_dimen:NnN
1856 {
1857 \dim_set:Nn #1 { \fontdimen #2 #3 }
1858 \dim_compare:nNnT #1 = {0pt}
```

```
1859
1860
        \settoheight #1
1861
1862
          \str_if_eq:nnTF {#3} {\font} \rmfamily #3
1863
          \int_case:nnn #2
1864
1865
              {5} {x} % x-height
1866
             {8} {X} % cap-height
           } {?} % "else" clause; never reached.
1867
1868
1869
       }
1870 }
```

Inter-word space These options set the relevant \fontdimens for the font being loaded.

```
1871 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {WordSpace}
1872 {
1873 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1874 { \_fontspec_parse_wordspace:w #1,,,\q_stop }
1875 }
```

_fontspec_parse_wordspace:w

This macro determines if the input to WordSpace is of the form $\{X\}$ or $\{X,Y,Z\}$ and executes the font scaling. If the former input, it executes $\{X,X,X\}$.

```
1876 \cs_set:Npn \_fontspec_parse_wordspace:w #1,#2,#3,#4 \q_stop
1877 {
     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#4}
1878
1879
1880
        tl_set:Nn \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
1881
1882
          \fontdimen 2 \font = #1 \fontdimen 2 \font
1883
          \fontdimen 3 \font = #1 \fontdimen 3 \font
          \fontdimen 4 \font = #1 \fontdimen 4 \font
1884
         }
1885
      }
1886
1887
        tl_set:Nn \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
1888
1889
1890
          \fontdimen 2 \font = #1 \fontdimen 2 \font
1891
          fontdimen 3 font = #2 fontdimen 3 font
1892
          \fontdimen 4 \font = #3 \fontdimen 4 \font
1893
         }
1894
      }
1895 }
```

Punctuation space Scaling factor for the nominal \fontdimen#7.

```
1896 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {PunctuationSpace}
1897 {
1898 \str_case_x:nnF {#1}
1899 {
1900 {WordSpace}
1901 {
1902 \t1_set:Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_t1
```

```
{ \fontdimen 7 \font = 0 \fontdimen 2 \font }
1903
1904
        }
1905
        {TwiceWordSpace}
1906
1907
         tl_set:Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
1908
          { \fontdimen 7 \font = 1 \fontdimen 2 \font }
1909
       }
1910
      }
1911
1912
        \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
        { \fontdimen 7 \font = #1 \fontdimen 7 \font }
1913
1914
      }
1915 }
```

Secret hook into the font-adjustment code

```
1916 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {FontAdjustment}
1917 {
1918 \tl_put_right:Nx \l_@@_postadjust_tl {#1}
1919 }
```

Letterspacing

```
1920 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {LetterSpace}
1921 {
1922 \@@_update_featstr:n {letterspace=#1}
1923 }
```

Hyphenation character This feature takes one of three arguments: 'None', $\langle glyph \rangle$, or $\langle slot \rangle$. If the input isn't the first, and it's one character, then it's the second; otherwise, it's the third.

```
1924 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {HyphenChar}
1925 {
     \str_if_eq:nnTF {#1} {None}
1926
1927
        \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_postadjust_tl
1928
1929
          { \hyphenchar \font = \c_minus_one }
1930
1931
1932
        \tl_if_single:nTF {#1}
        { \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl {'#1} }
1933
1934
        { \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl { #1} }
        \font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF \l_fontspec_font {\l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl}
1935
1936
          \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_postadjust_tl
1937
1938 (*xetexx)
            { \hyphenchar \font = \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl \scan_stop: }
1939
1940 (/xetexx)
1941 (*luatex)
1942
              \hyphenchar \font = \c_zero
1943
              \luatexprehyphenchar = \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl \scan_stop:
1944
```

```
1946 \langle / luatex \rangle
1947
1948
        { \@@_error:nx {no-glyph}{#1} }
1949
1950 }
 Color Hooks into pkgxcolor, which names its colours \color@<name>.
1951 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Color}
1952 {
     \cs_if_exist:cTF { \token_to_str:N \color@ #1 }
1953
1954
      {
       \verb|\convertcolorspec{named}{#1}{HTML}\\l\_@@\_hexcol\_tl|
1955
1956
      }
1957
1958
       1959
        { \t = \{ tl_set: Nn \l_@@_hexcol_tl \{#1\} \}
1960
         \int \int \int dt dt dt dt = 0
1961
          { \fontspec_parse_colour:viii #1 }
1962
1963
           \bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1964
            { \@@_warning:nx {bad-colour} {#1} }
1965
1966
1967
        }
      }
1968
1969 }
1970 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_parse_colour:viii #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
1972
     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_hexcol_tl {#1#2#3#4#5#6}
     1973
1974
       \verb|\bool_if:NF \l_@@\_firsttime\_bool|
1975
1976
        { \ensuremath{\mbox{\tt @0\_warning:nx}}\ \{\ensuremath{\mbox{\tt opa-twice-col}}\ \{\#7\#8\}\ }
1977
     tl_set:Nn \l_@@_opacity_tl {#7#8}
1978
1979 }
1980 \aliasfontfeature{Color}{Colour}
1981 \in N \ l@e_tmp_int
1982 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Opacity}
1983 {
     \int \ln \int 0^{-1} e^{-t} dt
1984
     1985
     \t_i=eq:NNF \l_@@_opacity_tl \g_@@_opacity_tl
1986
1987
       \verb|\bool_if:NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool|
1988
        { \@@_warning:nx {opa-twice} {#1} }
1989
1990
     tl_set:Nx \l_@@_opacity_tl
1991
1992
1993
        \int \int_{\infty}^{\infty} |f|^2 df
```

1945

```
\int_to_hexadecimal:n { \l_@@_tmp_int }
1994
      }
1995
1996 }
 Mapping
1997 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Mapping}
1998 (*xetexx)
1999 {
2000
     \@@_update_featstr:n { mapping = #1 }
2001 }
2002 \left< / \mathsf{xetexx} \right>
2003 (*luatex)
2004 {
     \str_if_eq:nnTF {#1} {tex-text}
2005
2006
2007
        \@@_warning:n {no-mapping-ligtex}
2008
        \msg_redirect_name:nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping-ligtex} {none}
2009
        \keys_set:nn {fontspec} { Ligatures=TeX }
2010
      { \@@_warning:n {no-mapping} }
2011
2012 }
2013 (/luatex)
 FeatureFile
2014 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {FeatureFile}
2015 {
2016 \@@_update_featstr:n { featurefile = #1 }
2017 }
 23.6.5 Continuous font axes
2018 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Weight}
2020 \@@_update_featstr:n{weight=#1}
2021 }
2022 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Width}
2023 {
2024 \@@_update_featstr:n{width=#1}
2025 }
2026 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {OpticalSize}
2027 (*xetexx)
2028 {
      \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
2029
2030
      {
        tl_set:Nn \l_@@_optical_size_tl {/ S = #1}
2031
2032
       }
2033
       {
        \bool_if:NT \l_@@_mm_bool
2034
2035
         {
2036
          \@@_update_featstr:n { optical size = #1 }
```

}

2037

```
2038
     \bool_if:nT { !\l_@@_ot_bool && !\l_@@_mm_bool }
2039
2040
       \bool_if:NT \l_@@_firsttime\_bool
2041
2042
        { \@@_warning:n {no-opticals} }
2043
      }
2044 }
2045 (/xetexx)
2046 \langle *luatex \rangle
2047 {
2048 \t! S = #1}
2049 }
2050 (/luatex)
```

23.6.6 Font transformations

These are to be specified to apply directly to a font shape:

```
2051 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2052 {
     FakeSlant .code:n =
2053
2054
2055
        \@@_update_featstr:n{slant=#1}
2056
       },
2057
     FakeSlant .default:n = {0.2}
2058 }
2059 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2060 {
     FakeStretch .code:n =
2061
2062
        \@@_update_featstr:n{extend=#1}
2063
2064
      FakeStretch .default:n = {1.2}
2065
2066 }
2067 (*xetexx)
2068 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2069 {
2070
     FakeBold .code:n =
2071
2072
        \@@_update_featstr:n {embolden=#1}
2073
       },
     FakeBold .default:n = {1.5}
2074
2075 }
2076 (/xetexx)
2077 (*luatex)
2078 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2079 {
2080 FakeBold .code:n = { \@@_warning:n {fakebold-only-xetex} }
2081 }
2082 \langle /luatex \rangle
```

These are to be given to a shape that has no real bold/italic to signal that fontspec should automatically create 'fake' shapes.

The behaviour is currently that only if both AutoFakeSlant and AutoFakeBold are speci-

fied, the bold italic is also faked.

These features presently *override* real shapes found in the font; in the future I'd like these features to be ignored in this case, instead. (This is just a bit harder to program in the current design of fontspec.)

```
2083 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2084 {
     AutoFakeSlant .code:n =
2085
2086
2087
        \bool_if:NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2088
          \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl {#1}
2089
          \clist_put_right:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist {FakeSlant=#1}
2090
2091
          \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
2092
          \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_noit_bool
2093
          \tl_if_empty:NF \l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl
2094
2095
           {
2096
            \clist_put_right:Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
             {\tt FakeBold=\l_fontspec\_fake\_embolden\_tl}\\
2097
            \clist_put_right:Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {FakeSlant=#1}
2098
2099
            \verb|\tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl|
2100
2101
2102
      },
     AutoFakeSlant .default:n = {0.2}
2104 }
 Same but reversed:
2105 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2106 {
2107
     AutoFakeBold .code:n =
2108
2109
        \bool_if:NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2110
2111
          \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl {#1}
          \clist_put_right:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist {FakeBold=#1}
2112
2113
          \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
          \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
2114
2115
          \tl_if_empty:NF \l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl
2116
2117
2118
            \clist_put_right:Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
2119
             {FakeSlant=\l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl}
            \clist_put_right:Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {FakeBold=#1}
2120
            \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
2122
           }
2123
        }
      },
2124
     AutoFakeBold .default:n = \{1.5\}
2125
2126 }
```

23.6.7 Ligatures

The call to the nested keyval family must be wrapped in braces to hide the parent list (this later requires the use of global definitions (\xdef) in [...]). Both AAT and OpenType names are offered to chose Rare/Discretionary ligatures.

```
2127 \@@_define_font_feature:n{Ligatures}
2128 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Required}
                                                                                                                                {1}{0}{+rlig}
                                                                                                                                {1}{1}{-rlig}
2129 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoRequired}
2130 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Common}
                                                                                                                                {1}{2}{+liga}
2131 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoCommon}
                                                                                                                                {1}{3}{-liga}
2132 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Rare}
                                                                                                                                {1}{4}{+dlig}
2133 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoRare}
                                                                                                                                {1}{5}{-dlig}
2134 \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc define-feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}}}\ {1}{4}{+dlig}
2135 \ensuremath{\mbox{\tt QQ\_define\_feature\_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\tt NoDiscretionary}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\tt 135}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\tt NoDiscretionary}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\tt 135}} \ensurema
2136 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Contextual}
                                                                                                                                {}{} {+clig}
2137 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoContextual}
                                                                                                                                {}{} {-clig}
2138 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Historic}
                                                                                                                                {}{} {+hlig}
2139 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoHistoric}
                                                                                                                                {}{} {-hlig}
2140 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Logos}
                                                                                                                                {1}{6} {}
                                                                                                                                {1}{7} {}
2141 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoLogos}
2142 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Rebus}
                                                                                                                                {1}{8} {}
2143 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoRebus}
                                                                                                                                {1}{9} {}
2144 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Diphthong}
                                                                                                                                {1}{10}{}
2145 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoDiphthong}
                                                                                                                                {1}{11}{}
2146 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Squared}
                                                                                                                                {1}{12}{}
2147 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoSquared}
                                                                                                                                {1}{13}{}
2148 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{AbbrevSquared} {1}{14}{}
2149 \ensuremath{\mbox{\tt 00\_define\_feature\_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\tt NoAbbrevSquared}} \{1\} \{15\} \{1\} \} 
2150 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Icelandic}
                                                                                                                                {1}{32}{}
2151 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoIcelandic}
                                                                                                                                {1}{33}{}
  Emulate CM extra ligatures.
2152 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2153 {
2154 Ligatures / TeX .code:n =
2155
2156 (*xetexx)
               \@@_update_featstr:n { mapping = tex-text }
2158 (/xetexx)
2159 (*luatex)
2160
               \@@_update_featstr:n { +tlig; +trep }
2161 (/luatex)
2162
2163 }
  23.6.8 Letters
2164 \@@_define_font_feature:n{Letters}
2165 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Letters}{Normal}
                                                                                                                                    {3}{0}{}
2166 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Letters}{Uppercase}
                                                                                                                                    {3}{1}{+case}
2167 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Letters}{Lowercase}
                                                                                                                                    {3}{2}{}
```

{3}{3}{+smcp}

{} {} {+pcap}

2168 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Letters}{SmallCaps}

2169 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Letters}{PetiteCaps}

```
 2170 \ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}} \ensuremath{\mbox{$0$}
```

23.6.9 Numbers

These were originally separated into NumberCase and NumberSpacing following AAT, but it makes more sense to combine them.

Both naming conventions are offered to select the number case.

```
 2175 \ensurement{$0$} \ensurement{$0$
```

luaotload provides a custom anum feature for replacing Latin (AKA Arabic) numbers with Arabic (AKA Indic-Arabic). The same feature maps to Farsi (Persian) numbers if font language is Farsi.

```
2184 \luatex_if_engine:T
2185 {
2186 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Numbers}{Arabic}{}{}+anum}
2187 }
```

23.6.10 Contextuals

```
2188 \@@_define_font_feature:n {Contextuals}
2189 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{Swash}
                                                                                                                                                                                      {} {} {+cswh}
                                                                                                                                                                                      {} {} {-cswh}
2190 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoSwash}
2191 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{Alternate}
                                                                                                                                                                                      {} {} {+calt}
2192 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoAlternate}
                                                                                                                                                                                    {} {} {-calt}
2193 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{WordInitial} {8}{0}{+init}
2194 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoWordInitial}{8}{1}{-init}
2195 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{WordFinal}
                                                                                                                                                                                      {8}{2}{+fina}
2196 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoWordFinal} {8}{3}{-fina}
2197 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{LineInitial} {8}{4}{}
2198 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoLineInitial}{8}{5}{}
2199 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{LineFinal}
                                                                                                                                                                                      {8}{6}{+falt}
2200 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoLineFinal}
                                                                                                                                                                                     {8}{7}{-falt}
                                                                                                                                                                                      \{8\}\{8\}\{+medi\}
2201 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{Inner}
{\tt 2202 \endown} \begin{tabular}{l} \tt 2202 \endown \
                                                                                                                                                                                      \{8\}\{9\}\{-medi\}
```

23.6.11 Diacritics

```
2203 \@@_define_font_feature:n{Diacritics}
2204 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{Show} {9}{0}{{}}{}}
2205 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{Hide} {9}{1}{{}}{}}
2206 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{Decompose} {9}{2}{{}}}
2207 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{MarkToBase} {}{}}+mark}
```

23.6.12 Kerning

```
2215 \@@_define_font_feature:n{Kerning}
2216 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnnn{Kerning}{Uppercase}{}{}{+cpsp}
2217 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnnn{Kerning}{On} {}{}{+kern}
2218 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Kerning}{Off} {}{}{-kern}
2219 %\@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Kerning}{Vertical}{}{}{+vkrn}
2220 %\@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Kerning}
2221 % {VerticalAlternateProportional}{}{}{+vpal}
2222 %\@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Kerning}{VerticalAlternateHalfWidth}{}{}{+vhal}
```

23.6.13 Vertical position

23.6.14 Fractions

23.6.15 Alternates and variants

Selected numerically because they don't have standard names. Very easy to process, very annoying for the user!

```
2236 \@@_define_font_feature:n { Alternate }
2237 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2238 {
     Alternate .default:n = {0},
2239
     Alternate / unknown .code:n =
2240
2241
      {
2242
        \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
2243
          { \fontspec_make_feature:nnx {17}{\#1} { \fontspec_salt:n {\#$1} } }
2244
      }
2245 }
2246 \cs_set:Nn \fontspec_salt:n { +salt = #1 }
2247 \@@_define_font_feature:n {Variant}
```

```
2248 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2249 {
2250
     Variant .default:n = {0} ,
2251
     Variant / unknown .code:n =
2252
2253
        \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
2254
          { \fontspec_make_feature:nnx {18}{##1} { +ss \two@digits {##1} } }
2255
       }
2256 }
2257 \aliasfontfeature{Variant}{StylisticSet}
2258 \@@_define_font_feature:n { CharacterVariant }
2259 \use:x
2260 {
2261
      \cs_new:Npn \exp_not:N \fontspec_parse_cv:w
2262
          ##1 \c_colon_str ##2 \c_colon_str ##3 \exp_not:N \q_nil
2263
         \fontspec_make_numbered_feature:xn
2264
           { +cv \exp_not:N \two@digits {##1} } {##2}
2265
2266
       }
      \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2267
2268
        CharacterVariant / unknown .code:n =
2269
2270
          \clist_map_inline:nn {##1}
2271
2272
2273
            \exp_not:N \fontspec_parse_cv:w
2274
              ####1 \c_colon_str 0 \c_colon_str \exp_not:N \q_nil
2275
2276
         }
2277
       }
2278 }
```

Possibilities: $a:0:\q_nil\ or\ a:b:0:\q_nil.$

23.6.16 Style

```
2279 \@@_define_font_feature:n{Style}
2280 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Alternate}
                                                                                                                                                                                        {} {} {+salt}
2281 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Italic}
                                                                                                                                                                                        {32}{2}{+ital}
2282 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Ruby}
                                                                                                                                                                                        {28}{2}{+ruby}
2283 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Swash}
                                                                                                                                                                                        {} {} {+swsh}
2284 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Historic}
                                                                                                                                                                                        {} {} {+hist}
2285 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Display}
                                                                                                                                                                                        {19}{1}{}
2286 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Engraved}
                                                                                                                                                                                        {19}{2}{}
2287 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{TitlingCaps}
                                                                                                                                                                                        {19}{4}{+titl}
2288 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{TallCaps}
                                                                                                                                                                                        {19}{5}{}
{\tt 2289 \endown} $$ \endown 
2290 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{VerticalKana} {}
                                                                                                                                                                                                     {} {+vkna}
2291 \fontspec_define_numbered_feat:nnnn {Style} {MathScript}
                                                                                                                                                                                                                     {+ssty} {0}
2292\fontspec_define_numbered_feat:nnnn {Style} {MathScriptScript} {+ssty} {1}
```

23.6.17 CJK shape

```
2293 \@@_define_font_feature:n{CJKShape}
2294\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\mbox{00\_define\_feature\_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{Traditional}{20}{0}}  {+trad}
2295 \\ \ensuremath{\tt QQ\_define\_feature\_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{Simplified} \ensuremath{\tt {20}{1}} \ensuremath{\tt {+smpl}} \ensuremath{\tt {20}{1}} \ensuremath{\tt {+smpl}} \ensuremath{\tt {20}{1}} \ensuremath{\tt {4}} \ensuremath{\tt {20}{1}} \ensuremath{\tt {4}} \ensuremath{\tt {1}} \ensuremath{\tt {4}} \ensuremath{\tt {1}} \ensuremath{\tt {4}} \ensuremath{\tt {1}} \ensuremath{\tt {4}} \ensuremath{\tt {2}} \ensuremath{\tt {4}} \ensurem
2296 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{JIS1978}
                                                                                                                                                                                                           {20}{2} {+jp78}
2297 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{JIS1983}
                                                                                                                                                                                                           {20}{3} {+jp83}
2298 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{JIS1990}
                                                                                                                                                                                                           {20}{4} {+jp90}
2299 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{Expert}
                                                                                                                                                                                                           {20}{10}{+expt}
2300 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{NLC}
                                                                                                                                                                                                           {20}{13}{+nlck}
    23.6.18 Character width
2301 \@@_define_font_feature:n{CharacterWidth}
2302 \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc 2302}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc 9}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc Proportional}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc 22}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc 9}} \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc 
2303 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Full}{22}{1}{+fwid}
2304 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Half}{22}{2}{+hwid}
2305 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Third}{22}{3}{+twid}
2306\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{
2308 \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc define_feature\_option:nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{AlternateHalf}{22}{6}{+halt}} \\
23.6.19 Annotation
2310 \ensuremath{\verb|@Q_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{0ff}{24}{0}{}}
2311 \ensuremath{\mbox{00\_define\_feature\_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{Box}{24}{1}{}}
2314 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{BlackCircle}{24}{4}{}
2315 \ensuremath{\mbox{Q@\_define\_feature\_option:nnnnn{Annotation}}{\mbox{Parenthesis}{24}{5}{}}}
2316 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{Period}{24}{6}{}
2317 \ensuremath{\mbox{Q@\_define\_feature\_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{RomanNumerals}{24}{7}{}}
2318 \ensuremath{\verb| @Q_define_feature\_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{Diamond}{24}{8}{}} \\
2319 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{BlackSquare}{24}{9}{}
2320 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{BlackRoundSquare}{24}{10}{}
2321 \@@_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{DoubleCircle}{24}{11}{}
2322 \@@_define_font_feature:n { Annotation }
2323 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2324 {
2325
                 Annotation .default:n = {0} ,
                   Annotation / unknown .code:n =
2326
2327
                          \fontspec_make_feature:nnx {}{}{ +nalt=#1 }
2328
2329
                       }
2330 }
    23.6.20 Vertical
2331 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
2332 {
2333
                   Vertical .choice: ,
2334
                   Vertical / RotatedGlyphs .code:n =
2335
2336
                           \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
```

2337

```
2338
         \fontspec_make_feature:nnn{}{}{+vrt2}
2339
         \@@_update_featstr:n {vertical}
2340
2341
        {
2342
         \@@_update_featstr:n {vertical}
2343
        }
2344
      }
2345 }
 23.6.21 Script
2346 \newfontscript{Arabic}{arab}
                                            \newfontscript{Armenian}{armn}
2347 \newfontscript{Balinese}{bali}
                                            \newfontscript{Bengali}{beng}
2348 \newfontscript{Bopomofo}{bopo}
                                            \newfontscript{Braille}{brai}
2349 \newfontscript{Buginese}{bugi}
                                            \newfontscript{Buhid}{buhd}
2350 \newfontscript{Byzantine~Music}{byzm}
2351 \newfontscript{Canadian~Syllabics}{cans}
2352 \newfontscript{Cherokee}{cher}
2353 \newfontscript{CJK~Ideographic}{hani}
                                            \newfontscript{Coptic}{copt}
2354 \newfontscript{Cypriot~Syllabary}{cprt} \newfontscript{Cyrillic}{cyrl}
2355 \newfontscript{Default}{DFLT}
                                            \newfontscript{Deseret}{dsrt}
2356 \newfontscript{Devanagari}{deva}
                                            \newfontscript{Ethiopic}{ethi}
2357 \newfontscript{Georgian}{geor}
                                            \newfontscript{Glagolitic}{glag}
2358 \newfontscript{Gothic}{goth}
                                            \newfontscript{Greek}{grek}
                                            \newfontscript{Gurmukhi}{guru}
2359 \newfontscript{Gujarati}{gujr}
2360 \newfontscript{Hangul~Jamo}{jamo}
                                            \newfontscript{Hangul}{hang}
2361 \newfontscript{Hanunoo}{hano}
                                            \newfontscript{Hebrew}{hebr}
\newfontscript{Kannada}{knda}
2363 \newfontscript{Javanese}{java}
2364 \newfontscript{Kharosthi}{khar}
                                            \newfontscript{Khmer}{khmr}
2365 \newfontscript{Lao}{lao~}
                                            \newfontscript{Latin}{latn}
2366 \newfontscript{Limbu}{limb}
                                            \newfontscript{Linear~B}{linb}
2367 \newfontscript{Malayalam}{mlym}
                                            \newfontscript{Math}{math}
2368 \newfontscript{Mongolian}{mong}
2369 \newfontscript{Musical~Symbols}{musc}
                                            \newfontscript{Myanmar}{mymr}
2370 \newfontscript{N'ko}{nko^}
                                            \newfontscript{Ogham}{ogam}
2371 \newfontscript{Old~Italic}{ital}
2372 \newfontscript{Old~Persian~Cuneiform}{xpeo}
                                            \newfontscript{Osmanya}{osma}
2373 \newfontscript{Oriya}{orya}
2374 \newfontscript{Phags-pa}{phag}
                                            \newfontscript{Phoenician}{phnx}
2375 \newfontscript{Runic}{runr}
                                            \newfontscript{Shavian}{shaw}
2376 \newfontscript{Sinhala}{sinh}
2377 \newfontscript{Sumero-Akkadian~Cuneiform}{xsux}
2378 \newfontscript{Syloti~Nagri}{sylo}
                                            \newfontscript{Syriac}{syrc}
2379 \newfontscript{Tagalog}{tglg}
                                            \newfontscript{Tagbanwa}{tagb}
2380 \newfontscript{Tai~Le}{tale}
                                            \newfontscript{Tai~Lu}{talu}
2381 \newfontscript{Tamil}{taml}
                                            \newfontscript{Telugu}{telu}
2382 \newfontscript{Thaana}{thaa}
                                            \newfontscript{Thai}{thai}
2383 \newfontscript{Tibetan}{tibt}
                                            \newfontscript{Tifinagh}{tfng}
2384 \newfontscript{Ugaritic~Cuneiform}{ugar}\newfontscript{Yi}{yi~~}
 For convenience:
```

2385 \newfontscript{Kana}{kana}

```
2386 \newfontscript{Maths}{math} 2387 \newfontscript{CJK}{hani}
```

23.6.22 Language

```
2388 \newfontlanguage{Abaza}{ABA}\newfontlanguage{Abkhazian}{ABK}
2389 \newfontlanguage \{Adyghe\} \{ADY\} \newfontlanguage \{Afrikaans\} \{AFK\} \}
2390 \newfontlanguage{Afar}{AFR}\newfontlanguage{Agaw}{AGW}
2394 \newfontlanguage{Athapaskan}{ATH} \newfontlanguage{Avar}{AVR}
2395 \newfontlanguage{Awadhi}{AWA}\newfontlanguage{Aymara}{AYM}
2396 \newfontlanguage{Azeri}{AZE}\newfontlanguage{Badaga}{BAD}
2397 \newfontlanguage{Baghelkhandi}{BAG}\newfontlanguage{Balkar}{BAL}
2398 \newfontlanguage{Baule}{BAU}\newfontlanguage{Berber}{BBR}
2399 \newfontlanguage{Bench}{BCH}\newfontlanguage{Bible~Cree}{BCR}
2400 \newfontlanguage{Belarussian}{BEL}\newfontlanguage{Bemba}{BEM}
2401 \newfontlanguage{Bengali}{BEN}\newfontlanguage{Bulgarian}{BGR}
2402 \newfontlanguage{Bhili}{BHI}\newfontlanguage{Bhojpuri}{BHO}
2403 \newfontlanguage{Bikol}{BIK}\newfontlanguage{Bilen}{BIL}
2404 \newfontlanguage{Blackfoot}{BKF}\newfontlanguage{Balochi}{BLI}
2405 \newfontlanguage{Balante}{BLN}\newfontlanguage{Balti}{BLT}
2406 \newfontlanguage{Bambara}{BMB}\newfontlanguage{Bamileke}{BML}
2407 \verb| newfontlanguage{Breton}{BRE} \verb| newfontlanguage{Brahui}{BRH}|
2409 \newfontlanguage{Bashkir}{BSH}\\ newfontlanguage{Beti}{BTI}
2410 \newfontlanguage{Catalan}{CAT}\newfontlanguage{Cebuano}{CEB}
2411 \newfontlanguage{Chechen}{CHE}\newfontlanguage{Chaha~Gurage}{CHG}
2413 \newfontlanguage\{Chukchi\}\{CHK\} \newfontlanguage\{Chipewyan\}\{CHP\}
2414 \newfontlanguage{Cherokee}{CHR}\newfontlanguage{Chuvash}{CHU}
2415 \newfontlanguage{Comorian}{CMR}\newfontlanguage{Coptic}{COP}
2416 \newfontlanguage{Cree}{CRE}\newfontlanguage{Carrier}{CRR}
2417 \newfontlanguage \{Crimean `Tatar\} \{CRT\} \newfontlanguage \{Church `Slavonic\} \{CSL\} \newfontlanguage \{Church `Slavonic] \{CSL\} \newfontlanguage \{CSL\} \new
2418 \newfontlanguage{Czech}{CSY}\newfontlanguage{Danish}{DAN}
2419 \newfontlanguage{Dargwa}{DAR}\newfontlanguage{Woods~Cree}{DCR}
2420 \newfontlanguage{German}{DEU}
2421 \newfontlanguage{Dogri}{DGR}\newfontlanguage{Divehi}{DIV}
2422 \newfontlanguage{Djerma}{DJR}\newfontlanguage{Dangme}{DNG}
2423 \newfontlanguage{Dinka}{DNK}\newfontlanguage{Dungan}{DUN}
2424 \newfontlanguage{Dzongkha}{DZN}\newfontlanguage{Ebira}{EBI}
2425 \newfontlanguage{Edo}{EDO}
2426 \newfontlanguage{Efik}{EFI}\newfontlanguage{Greek}{ELL}
{\tt 2427 \ language{English}{ENG} \ language{Erzya}{ERZ}}
{\tt 2428 \ language \{Spanish\}\{ESP\} \ language \{Estonian\}\{ETI\} }
2431 \newfontlanguage{French~Antillean}{FAN}
2432 \newfontlanguage{Farsi}{FAR}
2433 \newfontlanguage{Parsi}{FAR}
2434 \newfontlanguage{Persian}{FAR}
2435 \newfontlanguage{Finnish}{FIN}\newfontlanguage{Fijian}{FJI}
```

```
2436 \newfontlanguage \{Flemish\} \{FLE\} \newfontlanguage \{Forest^Nenets\} \{FNE\} \newfontlanguage \{Forest^Nenets\} \{FNE\} \newfontlanguage \}
2437 \newfontlanguage{Fon}{FON}\newfontlanguage{Faroese}{FOS}
2438 \newfontlanguage{French}{FRA}\newfontlanguage{Frisian}{FRI}
2441 \newfontlanguage{Gaelic}{GAE}\newfontlanguage{Gagauz}{GAG}
2442 \newfontlanguage{Galician}{GAL}\newfontlanguage{Garshuni}{GAR}
2443 \newfontlanguage \{Garhwali\} \{GAW\} \newfontlanguage \{Ge'ez\} \{GEZ\} \}
2444 \newfontlanguage{Gilyak}{GIL}\newfontlanguage{Gumuz}{GMZ}
2445 \newfontlanguage \{Gondi\} \{GON\} \newfontlanguage \{Greenlandic\} \{GRN\} \} \newfontlanguage \{Greenlandic\} \{GRN\} \newfontlanguage \{Greenlandic\} \{GRN\} \} \newfontlanguage \{Greenlandic\} \{GRN\} \} \newfontlanguage \{Greenlandic\} \{GRN\} \} \newfontlanguage \{Greenlandic\} \{GRN\} \} \newfontlanguage \{GRN\} \} \newfontlang
2446 \newfontlanguage \{Garo\} \{GRO\} \newfontlanguage \{Guarani\} \{GUA\} \}
2447 \newfontlanguage{Gujarati}{GUJ}\newfontlanguage{Haitian}{HAI}
2448 \newfontlanguage{Halam}{HAL}\newfontlanguage{Harauti}{HAR}
2449 \newfontlanguage{Hausa}{HAU} \newfontlanguage{Hawaiin}{HAW}
2450 \newfontlanguage{Hammer-Banna}{HBN}\newfontlanguage{Hiligaynon}{HIL}
2451 \newfontlanguage{Hindi}{HIN}\newfontlanguage{High~Mari}{HMA}
2452 \newfontlanguage{Hindko}{HND}\newfontlanguage{Ho}{HO}
2453 \newfontlanguage{Harari}{HRI}\newfontlanguage{Croatian}{HRV}
2454 \newfontlanguage{Hungarian}{HUN}\newfontlanguage{Armenian}{HYE}
2455 \newfontlanguage{Igbo}{IBO}\\newfontlanguage{Ijo}{IJO}
2456 \newfontlanguage{Ilokano}{ILO} \newfontlanguage{Indonesian}{IND} \\
2457 \newfontlanguage{Ingush}{ING}\newfontlanguage{Inuktitut}{INU}
2458 \newfontlanguage{Irish}{IRI}\newfontlanguage{Irish~Traditional}{IRT}
2459 \newfontlanguage{Icelandic} ISL\newfontlanguage{Inari~Sami} ISM{} \\
2460 \newfontlanguage{Italian}{ITA} \newfontlanguage{Hebrew}{IWR}
2461 \newfontlanguage{Javanese}{JAV}\newfontlanguage{Yiddish}{JII}
2462 \newfontlanguage{Japanese}{JAN}\newfontlanguage{Judezmo}{JUD}
2463 \newfontlanguage{Jula}{JUL}\newfontlanguage{Kabardian}{KAB}
2464 \newfontlanguage{Kachchi}{KAC}\newfontlanguage{Kalenjin}{KAL}
2465 \mbox{ } \mbox
2466 \newfontlanguage \{Georgian\} \{KAT\} \newfontlanguage \{Kazakh\} \{KAZ\} \}
2467 \newfontlanguage{Kebena}{KEB}\newfontlanguage{Khutsuri~Georgian}{KGE}
2468 \newfontlanguage{Khakass}{KHA}\newfontlanguage{Khanty-Kazim}{KHK}
2470 \newfontlanguage{Khanty-Vakhi}{KHV}\newfontlanguage{Khowar}{KHW}
2471 \newfontlanguage{Kikuyu}{KIK}\newfontlanguage{Kirghiz}{KIR}
2472 \newfontlanguage{Kisii}{KIS}\newfontlanguage{Kokni}{KKN}
2473 \newfontlanguage{Kalmyk}{KLM}\newfontlanguage{Kamba}{KMB}
2474 \newfontlanguage{Kumaoni}{KMN}\newfontlanguage{Komo}{KMO}
2475 \newfontlanguage{Komso}{KMS}\newfontlanguage{Kanuri}{KNR}
2477 \newfontlanguage{Konkani}{KOK}\newfontlanguage{Kikongo}{KON}
2478 \newfontlanguage{Komi-Permyak}{KOP}\newfontlanguage{Korean}{KOR}
2479 \newfontlanguage\{Komi-Zyrian\}\{KOZ\} \newfontlanguage\{Kpelle\}\{KPL\}\} \newfontlanguage\{Kpe
2480 \newfontlanguage\{Krio\}\{KRI\} \newfontlanguage\{Karakalpak\}\{KRK\}\}
2481 \newfontlanguage{Karelian}{KRL}\newfontlanguage{Karaim}{KRM}
2482 \newfontlanguage{Karen}{KRN}\newfontlanguage{Koorete}{KRT}
2483 \newfontlanguage{Kashmiri}{KSH}\newfontlanguage{Khasi}{KSI}
2484 \newfontlanguage{Kildin~Sami}{KSM}\newfontlanguage{Kui}{KUI}
2485 \newfontlanguage{Kulvi}{KUL}\newfontlanguage{Kumyk}{KUM}
2486 \newfontlanguage\{Kurdish\}\{KUR\} \newfontlanguage\{Kurukh\}\{KUU\}\}
```

```
2488 \newfontlanguage{Ladin}{LAD}\newfontlanguage{Lahuli}{LAH}
2489 \newfontlanguage{Lak}{LAK}\newfontlanguage{Lambani}{LAM}
2492 \newfontlanguage{Ladakhi}{LDK}\newfontlanguage{Lezgi}{LEZ}
2493 \newfontlanguage{Lingala}{LIN}\newfontlanguage{Low~Mari}{LMA}
2494 \newfontlanguage\{Limbu\}\{LMB\} \newfontlanguage\{Lomwe\}\{LMW\}
2495 \newfontlanguage{Lower~Sorbian}{LSB}\newfontlanguage{Lule~Sami}{LSM}
2496 \newfontlanguage{Lithuanian}{LTH}\newfontlanguage{Luba}{LUB}
2498 \newfontlanguage{Luo}{LUO}\newfontlanguage{Latvian}{LVI}
2499 \newfontlanguage{Majang}{MAJ}\newfontlanguage{Makua}{MAK}
2500 \newfontlanguage{Malayalam~Traditional}{MAL}\newfontlanguage{Mansi}{MAN}
2501 \newfontlanguage{Marathi}{MAR}\newfontlanguage{Marwari}{MAW}
2502 \newfontlanguage{Mbundu}{MBN}\newfontlanguage{Manchu}{MCH}
2503 \newfontlanguage{Moose~Cree}{MCR}\newfontlanguage{Mende}{MDE}
2504 \newfontlanguage{Me'en}{MEN}\newfontlanguage{Mizo}{MIZ}
2505 \newfontlanguage{Macedonian}{MKD}\newfontlanguage{Male}{MLE}
2506 \newfontlanguage\{Malagasy\}\{MLG\}\newfontlanguage\{Malinke\}\{MLN\}\}
2507 \newfontlanguage\{Malayalam~Reformed\}\{MLR\}\newfontlanguage\{Malay\}\{MLY\}\}
2508 \newfontlanguage{Mandinka}{MND}\newfontlanguage{Mongolian}{MNG}
2509 \newfontlanguage{Manipuri}{MNI}\newfontlanguage{Maninka}{MNK}
2510 \newfontlanguage\{Manx^Gaelic\}\{MNX\} \newfontlanguage\{Moksha\}\{MOK\}\}
2511 \newfontlanguage\{Moldavian\}\{MOL\} \newfontlanguage\{Mon\}\{MON\}\}
2512 \newfontlanguage\{Moroccan\}\{MOR\} \newfontlanguage\{Maori\}\{MRI\}\}
2513 \newfontlanguage{Maithili}{MTH}\newfontlanguage{Maltese}{MTS}
2514 \newfontlanguage{Mundari}{MUN}\newfontlanguage{Naga-Assamese}{NAG}
2515 \newfontlanguage{Nanai}{NAN}\newfontlanguage{Naskapi}{NAS}
2516 \newfontlanguage{N-Cree}{NCR}\newfontlanguage{Ndebele}{NDB}
2517 \newfontlanguage{Ndonga}{NDG}\newfontlanguage{Nepali}{NEP}
2518 \newfontlanguage{Newari}{NEW}\newfontlanguage{Nagari}{NGR}
2519 \newfontlanguage{Norway~House~Cree}{NHC}\newfontlanguage{Nisi}{NIS}
2520 \newfontlanguage{Niuean}{NIU} \newfontlanguage{Nkole}{NKL}
2521 \newfontlanguage{N'ko}{NKO}\newfontlanguage{Dutch}{NLD}
2522 \newfontlanguage{Nogai}{NOG}\newfontlanguage{Norwegian}{NOR}
2523 \newfontlanguage{Northern~Sami}{NSM}\newfontlanguage{Northern~Tai}{NTA}
2524 \newfontlanguage{Esperanto}{NTO}\newfontlanguage{Nynorsk}{NYN}
2525 \newfontlanguage{Oji-Cree}{OCR}\newfontlanguage{Ojibway}{OJB}
2526 \newfontlanguage{Oriya}{ORI}\newfontlanguage{Oromo}{ORO}
2527 \newfontlanguage{Ossetian}{OSS}\newfontlanguage{Palestinian~Aramaic}{PAA}
2528 \newfontlanguage{Pali}{PAL}\newfontlanguage{Punjabi}{PAN}
2529 \newfontlanguage{Palpa}{PAP}\newfontlanguage{Pashto}{PAS}
2530 \newfontlanguage \{Polytonic \ Greek\} \{PGR\} \newfontlanguage \{Pilipino\} \{PIL\} \}
2531 \newfontlanguage{Palaung}{PLG} \newfontlanguage{Polish}{PLK}
2532 \newfontlanguage{Provencal}{PRO}\newfontlanguage{Portuguese}{PTG}
2533 \newfontlanguage{Chin}{QIN}\newfontlanguage{Rajasthani}{RAJ}
2534 \newfontlanguage{R-Cree}{RCR}\newfontlanguage{Russian~Buriat}{RBU}
2535 \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}} RIA} \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}} RMS \}
2536 \newfontlanguage{Romanian}{ROM}\newfontlanguage{Romany}{ROY}
2537 \end{align*} \end{align*} $$ \end{align*} \end{ali
```

```
2539 \newfontlanguage{Sanskrit}{SAN}\newfontlanguage{Santali}{SAT}
2540 \newfontlanguage{Sayisi}{SAY}\newfontlanguage{Sekota}{SEK}
2541 \newfontlanguage{Selkup}{SEL}\newfontlanguage{Sango}{SGO}
2542 \newfontlanguage{Shan}{SHN} newfontlanguage{Sibe}{SIB}
2543 \newfontlanguage{Sidamo}{SID}\newfontlanguage{Silte~Gurage}{SIG}
2544 \newfontlanguage{Skolt~Sami}{SKS}\newfontlanguage{Slovak}{SKY}
2545 \newfontlanguage \{Slavey\} \{SLA\} \newfontlanguage \{Slovenian\} \{SLV\} \}
2546 \verb| newfontlanguage{Somali}{SML} \verb| newfontlanguage{Samoan}{SMO}|
2547 \rightarrow SNA}\rightarrow SNA
2548 \newfontlanguage{Sinhalese}{SNH}\newfontlanguage{Soninke}{SNK}
2549 \newfontlanguage{Sodo~Gurage}{SOG}\newfontlanguage{Sotho}{SOT}
2550 \newfontlanguage{Albanian}{SQI}\newfontlanguage{Serbian}{SRB}
2551 \newfontlanguage{Saraiki}{SRK}\newfontlanguage{Serer}{SRR}
2552 \newfontlanguage{South~Slavey}{SSL}\newfontlanguage{Southern~Sami}{SSM}
2553 \newfontlanguage{Suri}{SUR}\newfontlanguage{Svan}{SVA}
2554 \newfontlanguage{Swedish}{SVE}\newfontlanguage{Swadaya~Aramaic}{SWA}
2555 \newfontlanguage{Swahili}{SWK}\newfontlanguage{Swazi}{SWZ}
2556 \newfontlanguage{Sutu}{SXT}\newfontlanguage{Syriac}{SYR}
2557 \newfontlanguage{Tabasaran}{TAB} \newfontlanguage{Tajiki}{TAJ}
2558 \newfontlanguage{Tamil}{TAM} \newfontlanguage{Tatar}{TAT}
2559 \newfontlanguage{TH-Cree}{TCR}\newfontlanguage{Telugu}{TEL}
2560 \newfontlanguage{Tongan}{TGN}\newfontlanguage{Tigre}{TGR}
2561 \newfontlanguage{Tigrinya}{TGY} \newfontlanguage{Thai}{THA}
2562 \newfontlanguage{Tahitian}{THT}\newfontlanguage{Tibetan}{TIB}
2563 \newfontlanguage{Turkmen}{TKM}\newfontlanguage{Temne}{TMN}
2564 \newfontlanguage{Tswana}{TNA}\newfontlanguage{Tundra~Nenets}{TNE}
2565 \newfontlanguage{Tonga}{TNG}\newfontlanguage{Todo}{TOD}
2566 \newfontlanguage{Tsonga}{TSG}\newfontlanguage{Turoyo~Aramaic}{TUA}
2567 \newfontlanguage{Tulu}{TUL}\newfontlanguage{Tuvin}{TUV}
2568 \newfontlanguage{Twi}{TWI}\newfontlanguage{Udmurt}{UDM}
2569 \newfontlanguage{Ukrainian}{UKR}\newfontlanguage{Urdu}{URD}
2570 \newfontlanguage{Upper~Sorbian}{USB}\newfontlanguage{Uyghur}{UYG}
2571 \newfontlanguage{Uzbek}{UZB}\\newfontlanguage{Venda}{VEN}
2572 \newfontlanguage{Vietnamese}{VIT}\newfontlanguage{Wa}{WA}
2573 \newfontlanguage{Wagdi}{WAG}\newfontlanguage{West-Cree}{WCR}
2574 \newfontlanguage{Welsh}{WEL}\newfontlanguage{Wolof}{WLF}
2575 \newfontlanguage{Tai~Lue}{XBD}\newfontlanguage{Xhosa}{XHS}
2576 \newfontlanguage{Yakut}{YAK}\newfontlanguage{Yoruba}{YBA}
2578 \newfontlanguage{Yi~Modern}{YIM}\newfontlanguage{Chinese~Hong~Kong}{ZHH}
2579 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Phonetic}{ZHP}
2580 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Simplified}{ZHS}
2582 \newfontlanguage{Zulu}{ZUL}
   Turkish Turns out that many fonts use 'TUR' as their Turkish language tag rather than
   the specified 'TRK'. So we check for both:
2583 \keys_define:nn {fontspec}
              Language / Turkish .code:n =
2585
```

2586

```
2587
        \fontspec_check_lang:nTF {TRK}
2588
2589
          \int_set:Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
2590
          \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {TRK}
2591
2592
         {
2593
          \fontspec_check_lang:nTF {TUR}
2594
            \int_set:Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
2595
            \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {TUR}
2596
2597
           }
2598
            \@@_warning:nx {language-not-exist} {Turkish}
2599
            \keys_set:nn {fontspec} {Language=Default}
2600
2601
2602
        }
2603
      }
2604 }
 Default
2605 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec}{ Language / Default }
     \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {DFLT}
2607
```

23.6.23 Raw feature string

2608 2609 }

This allows savvy XqTeX-ers to input font features manually if they have already memorised the OpenType abbreviations and don't mind not having error checking.

```
2610 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {RawFeature}
2611 {
2612 \@@_update_featstr:n {#1}
2613 }
```

\int_zero:N \l_fontspec_language_int

23.7 Italic small caps

The following code for utilising italic small caps sensibly is inspired from Philip Lehman's *The Font Installation Guide*. Note that \upshape needs to be used *twice* to get from italic small caps to regular upright (it always goes to small caps, then regular upright).

\sishape First, the commands for actually selecting italic small caps are defined. I use si as the NFSS shape for italic small caps, but I have seen itsc and slsc also used. \sidefault may be redefined to one of these if required for compatibility.

```
2614 \providecommand*(\sidefault){si}
2615 \DeclareRobustCommand{\sishape}
2616 {
2617 \not@math@alphabet\sishape\relax
2618 \fontshape\sidefault\selectfont
2619 }
2620 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textsi}{\sishape}
```

\fontspec_blend_shape:nnn

This is the macro which enables the overload on the $\$.. shape commands. It takes three such arguments. In essence, the macro selects the first argument, unless the second argument is already selected, in which case it selects the third.

```
2621 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_blend_shape:nnn
         2622 {
               \bool_if:nTF
         2623
         2624
         2625
                 \str_if_eq_x_p:nn {\f@shape} {\#2} \&\&
         2626
                 \cs_if_exist_p:c {\f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/#3}
         2627
                { \fontshape{#3}\selectfont }
         2628
                { \fontshape{#1}\selectfont }
         2629
         2630 }
\itshape Here the original \...shape commands are redefined to use the merge shape macro.
\sc shape \ _{2631} \label{lem:2631} \
\label{eq:constraint} $$ \sup_{2632} \{
               \not@math@alphabet\itshape\mathit
         2633
              \fontspec_blend_shape:nnn\itdefault\scdefault\sidefault
         2634
         2635 }
         2636 \DeclareRobustCommand \slshape
         2637 {
               \not@math@alphabet\slshape\relax
               \fontspec_blend_shape:nnn\sldefault\scdefault\sidefault
         2640 }
         2641 \DeclareRobustCommand \scshape
         2642 {
               \not@math@alphabet\scshape\relax
         2643
               \fontspec_blend_shape:nnn\scdefault\itdefault\sidefault
         2644
         2645 }
         2646 \DeclareRobustCommand \upshape
         2647 {
               \not@math@alphabet\upshape\relax
               \fontspec_blend_shape:nnn\updefault\sidefault\scdefault
         2650 }
```

23.8 Selecting maths fonts

Here, the fonts used in math mode are redefined to correspond to the default roman, sans serif and typewriter fonts. Unfortunately, you can only define maths fonts in the preamble, otherwise I'd run this code whenever \setmainfont and friends was run.

\fontspec_setup_maths:

Everything here is performed \AtBeginDocument in order to overwrite euler's attempt. This means fontspec must be loaded *after* euler. We set up a conditional to return an error if this rule is violated.

Since every maths setup is slightly different, we also take different paths for defining various math glyphs depending which maths font package has been loaded.

```
2651 \@ifpackageloaded{euler}
2652 {
2653 \bool_set_true:N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
2654 }
```

```
2655 {
2656
     \bool_set_false:N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
2657 }
2658 \cs_set:Nn \fontspec_setup_maths:
2659 {
2660
     \@ifpackageloaded{euler}
2661
        \bool_if:NTF \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
2662
        { \bool_set_true:N \g_@@_math_euler_bool }
2663
        { \@@_error:n {euler-too-late} }
2664
      }
2665
2666
      {}
      \@ifpackageloaded{lucbmath}{\bool_set_true:N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool}{}
2667
      \@ifpackageloaded{lucidabr}{\bool_set_true:N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool}{}
2668
      \@ifpackageloaded{lucimatx}{\bool_set_true:N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool}{}
```

Knuth's CM fonts fonts are all squashed together, combining letters, accents, text symbols and maths symbols all in the one font, cmr, plus other things in other fonts. Because we are changing the roman font in the document, we need to redefine all of the maths glyphs in LaTeX's operators maths font to still go back to the legacy cmr font for all these random glyphs, unless a separate maths font package has been loaded instead.

In every case, the maths accents are always taken from the operators font, which is generally the main text font. (Actually, there is a \hat accent in EulerFractur, but it's ugly. So I ignore it. Sorry if this causes inconvenience.)

```
2670
      \DeclareSymbolFont{legacymaths}{OT1}{cmr}{m}{n}
      \SetSymbolFont{legacymaths}{bold}{OT1}{cmr}{bx}{n}
2671
      \DeclareMathAccent{\acute}
                                      {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{19}
2672
      \DeclareMathAccent{\grave}
                                       {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{18}
2673
      \DeclareMathAccent{\ddot}
                                       {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{127}
2674
2675
      \DeclareMathAccent{\tilde}
                                       {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{126}
2676
     \DeclareMathAccent{\bar}
                                       {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{22}
     \DeclareMathAccent{\breve}
                                       {\mathcal L}_{\mathcal L}^{(n)} = {\mathcal L}_{\mathcal L}^{(n)}
     \DeclareMathAccent{\check}
                                       {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{20}
                                       {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{94} % too bad, euler
2679
     \DeclareMathAccent{\hat}
2680
      \DeclareMathAccent{\dot}
                                       {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{95}
      \label{legacymaths} $$ \DeclareMathAccent{\mathbf{\Sigma}}{\mathcal{L}} $$ \DeclareMathAccent{\mathcal{L}} $$
```

\colon: what's going on? Okay, so : and \colon in maths mode are defined in a few places, so I need to work out what does what. Respectively, we have:

```
% fontmath.ltx:
\DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{operators}{"3A}
\DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{operators}{"3A}

% amsmath.sty:
\renewcommand{\colon}{\nobreak\mskip2mu\mathpunct{}\nonscript
\mkern-\thinmuskip{:}\mskip6muplus1mu\relax}

% euler.sty:
\DeclareMathSymbol{:}\mathrel {EulerFraktur}{"3A}

% lucbmath.sty:
\DeclareMathSymbol{\@tempb}{\mathpunct}{operators}{58}
```

```
\ifx\colon\@tempb
\DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{operators}{58}
\fi
\DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{operators}{58}
```

 $(3A_16 = 58_10)$ So I think, based on this summary, that it is fair to tell fontspec to 'replace' the operators font with legacymaths for this symbol, except when amsmath is loaded since we want to keep its definition.

```
2682 \group_begin:
2683 \mathchardef\@tempa="603A \relax
2684 \ifx\colon\@tempa
2685 \DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{legacymaths}{58}
2686 \fi
2687 \group_end:
```

The following symbols are only defined specifically in euler, so skip them if that package is loaded.

```
2688 \bool_if:NF \g_@@_math_euler_bool
2689 {
2690     \DeclareMathSymbol{!}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{33}}
2691     \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel} {legacymaths}{58}
2692     \DeclareMathSymbol{;}{\mathpunct}{legacymaths}{59}
2693     \DeclareMathSymbol{?}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{63}
```

And these ones are defined both in euler and lucbmath, so we only need to run this code if no extra maths package has been loaded.

```
\bool_if: NF \g_@@_math_lucida\_bool
2694
2695
                                                         {
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{0}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'0}
2696
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{1}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'1}
2697
2698
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{2}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'2}
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{3}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'3}
2699
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{4}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'4}
2700
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{5}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'5}
2701
                                                                 \label{legacymaths} $$ \Declare Math Symbol {6}{\mathbb{G}} \rightarrow {\mathbb{G}} $$
2702
2703
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{7}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'7}
2704
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{8}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'8}
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{9}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'9}
2705
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Gamma}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{0}
2706
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Delta}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{1}
2707
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Theta}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{2}
2708
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Lambda}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{3}
2709
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Xi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{4}
2710
                                                                 \label{legacymaths} $$ \DeclareMathSymbol{\Pi}{\mathcal Pi}_{\mathcal P
2711
                                                                 \label{legacymaths} $$ \DeclareMathSymbol{\Sigma}{\mathcal H}_{legacymaths}_{6} $$
2712
                                                                 2713
2714
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{\Phi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{8}
2715
                                                                 \label{legacymaths} $$ \DeclareMathSymbol{\Psi}{\mathcal P}_{\mathcal P}
2716
                                                                 \label{legacymaths} $$ \DeclareMathSymbol{\Omegaega}{\mathcal H}_{legacymaths}_{10} $$
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{+}{\mathbin}{legacymaths}{43}
2717
2718
                                                                 \DeclareMathSymbol{=}{\mathrel}{legacymaths}{61}
2719
                                                                 \DeclareMathDelimiter{(){\mathopen} {legacymaths}{40}{largesymbols}{0}
2720
```

```
2721 \DeclareMathDelimiter{[}{\mathopen} {legacymaths}{91}{largesymbols}{2}
2722 \DeclareMathDelimiter{]}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{93}{largesymbols}{3}
2723 \DeclareMathDelimiter{/}{\mathord}{legacymaths}{47}{largesymbols}{14}
2724 \DeclareMathSymbol{\mathdollar}{\mathord}{legacymaths}{36}
2725 }
2726 }
```

Finally, we change the font definitions for \mathrm and so on. These are defined using the \g_@@_mathrm_tl (...) macros, which default to \rmdefault but may be specified with the \setmathrm (...) commands in the preamble.

Since LaTeX only generally defines one level of boldness, we omit \mathbf in the bold maths series. It can be specified as per usual with \setboldmathrm, which stores the appropriate family name in \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl.

```
\DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet\mathrm{operators}
2730
 \SetMathAlphabet\mathtt{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathtt_tl\mddefault\updefault
 \SetSymbolFont{operators}{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault
 \t l_if_empty:NTF \g_00_bfmathrm_tl
2735
2736
2737
 2738
 }
2739
2740
 2741
 2742
2743
 2744
2745
 2746 }
```

\fontspec_maybe_setup_maths:

We're a little less sophisticated about not executing the maths setup if various other maths font packages are loaded. This list is based on the wonderful 'LATEXFont Catalogue': http://www.tug.dk/FontCatalogue/mathfonts.html. I'm sure there are more I've missed. Do the TEX Gyre fonts have maths support yet?

 $\label{lem:continum} Untested: would \verb|\unless| if num| Gamma=28672| relax| bool_set_false: N \\| g_@@_math_bool| fill be a better test? This needs more cooperation with euler and lucida, I think.$

```
2747 \cs_new: Nn \fontspec_maybe_setup_maths:
2748 {
2749
     \@ifpackageloaded{anttor}
2750
      {
      \ifx\define@antt@mathversions a\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
2751
2752
     \@ifpackageloaded{arev}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2753
     \@ifpackageloaded{eulervm}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2754
2755
     \@ifpackageloaded{mathdesign}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2756
     \@ifpackageloaded{concmath}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2757
     \@ifpackageloaded{cmbright}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2758
```

```
\@ifpackageloaded{gfsartemisia}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2759
2760
     \@ifpackageloaded{gfsneohellenic}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2761
     \@ifpackageloaded{iwona}
2762
2763
      2764
2765
     \@ifpackageloaded{kpfonts}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2766
     \@ifpackageloaded{kmath}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
     \@ifpackageloaded{kurier}
2767
2768
      \ifx\define@kurier@mathversions a\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
2769
2770
     \@ifpackageloaded{fouriernc}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2771
     \@ifpackageloaded{fourier}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2772
     \@ifpackageloaded{lmodern}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
     \@ifpackageloaded{mathpazo}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
     \@ifpackageloaded{mathptmx}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
    \@ifpackageloaded{MinionPro}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
     \@ifpackageloaded{unicode-math}{\bool_set_false:N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
    2778
     \bool_if:NT \g_@@_math_bool
2779
2780
2781
      \@@_info:n {setup-math}
2782
      \fontspec_setup_maths:
2783
      }
2784 }
2785 \AtBeginDocument{\fontspec_maybe_setup_maths:}
```

23.9 Finishing up

Now we just want to set up loading the .cfg file, if it exists.

```
2786 \bool_if:NT \g_@@_cfg_bool
2787 {
2788 \InputIfFileExists{fontspec.cfg}
2789 {}
2790 {\typeout{No^ fontspec.cfg^ file^ found; no^ configuration^ loaded.}}
```

23.10 Compatibility

```
\label{thm:periodic} $$ \end{cases} $$ \end{cases
```

Part VIII

fontspec.lua

```
1 (*lua)
First we define some metadata.
 2 fontspec = fontspec or {}
 3 local fontspec = fontspec
 4 fontspec.module = {
     name = "Tones,
version = "2.3c",
= "2013/05/20",
 6
    description = "Advanced font selection for LuaLaTeX.",
 8
    author = "Khaled Hosny, Philipp Gesang",
 9
     copyright = "Khaled Hosny, Philipp Gesang",
10
      license = "LPPL"
11
12 }
14 local err, warn, info, log = luatexbase.provides_module(fontspec.module)
Some utility functions
16 fontspec.log
                 = log
17 fontspec.warning = warn
18 fontspec.error = err
20 function fontspec.sprint (...)
      tex.sprint(luatexbase.catcodetables['latex-package'], ...)
   The following lines check for existence of a certain script, language or feature in a given
23 local check_script = luaotfload.aux.provides_script
24 local check_language = luaotfload.aux.provides_language
25 local check_feature = luaotfload.aux.provides_feature
   The following are the function that get called from T<sub>F</sub>X end.
26 \, local \, function \, temps watrue() \, fontspec.sprint([[\@temps watrue]]) \, end
27 local function tempswafalse() fontspec.sprint([[\@tempswafalse]]) end
28 function fontspec.check_ot_script(fnt, script)
      if check_script(font.id(fnt), script) then
29
30
          tempswatrue()
31
     else
32
          tempswafalse()
33
      end
35 function fontspec.check_ot_lang(fnt, lang, script)
36
      if check_language(font.id(fnt), script, lang) then
37
          tempswatrue()
38
      else
          tempswafalse()
39
      end
40
```

```
41 end
42 function fontspec.check_ot_feat(fnt, feat, lang, script)
      for _, f in ipairs { "+trep", "+tlig", "+anum" } do
43
          if feat == f then
44
              tempswatrue()
45
46
              return
47
          end
48
      end
      if check_feature(font.id(fnt), script, lang, feat) then
49
50
          tempswatrue()
51
      else
          tempswafalse()
52
53
      end
54 end
55 local get_math_dimension = luaotfload.aux.get_math_dimension
56 function fontspec.mathfontdimen(fnt, str)
      local mathdimens = get_math_dimension(fnt, str)
      if mathdimens then
58
          fontspec.sprint(mathdimens)
59
60
          fontspec.sprint("sp")
61
62
          fontspec.sprint("0pt")
63
      end
64 end
65 (/lua)
```

Part IX

fontspec-patches.sty

```
1 (*patches)
2 \ExplSyntaxOn
```

23.11 Unicode footnote symbols

This is handled by fixltx2e / LATEX2015 now.

```
3 \cs_if_exist:NF \TextOrMath
4 {
   % copy official definition:
   \protected\expandafter\def\csname TextOrMath\space\endcsname{%
      \ifmmode \expandafter\@secondoftwo
7
                \expandafter\@firstoftwo \fi}
8
9
   \edef\TextOrMath#1#2{%
      \expandafter\noexpand\csname TextOrMath\space\endcsname
10
11
      {#1}{#2}}
   % translation of official definition:
12
    \cs_set:Npn \@fnsymbol #1
13
14
      \int_case:nnF {#1}
15
16
17
        {0} {}
        {1} { \TextOrMath \textasteriskcentered* }
18
19
        {2} { \TextOrMath \textdagger\dagger }
        {3} { \TextOrMath \textdaggerdbl\ddagger }
20
21
        {4} { \TextOrMath \textsection\mathsection }
22
        {5} { \TextOrMath \textparagraph\mathparagraph }
        {6} { \TextOrMath \textbardbl\| }
23
        {7} { \TextOrMath {\textasteriskcentered\textasteriskcentered}{**} }
24
        {8} { \TextOrMath {\textdagger\textdagger}{\dagger\dagger} }
25
26
        {9} { \TextOrMath {\textdaggerdbl\textdaggerdbl}{\ddagger\ddagger} }
27
       }
28
       { \@ctrerr }
29
    }
30
    }
```

23.12 Emph

```
39 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\emph}{\em}
40 \cs_{eq:NN \emshape} 
41 \cs_set_eq:NN \eminnershape \upshape
```

23.13 \-

\- This macro is courtesy of Frank Mittelbach and the \LaTeX 2 $_{\epsilon}$ source code.

```
42 \DeclareRobustCommand{\-}
43 {
    \discretionary
44
45
      \char\ifnum\hyphenchar\font<\z@
46
              \xlx@defaulthyphenchar
47
            \else
48
              \hyphenchar\font
49
50
           \fi
51
     }{}{}
52 }
53 \def\xlx@defaulthyphenchar{'\-}
```

23.14 Verbatims

Many thanks to Apostolos Syropoulos for discovering this problem and writing the redefinion of \LaTeX verbatim environment and \checkmark command.

\fontspec_visible_space:

Print U+2434: OPEN BOX, which is used to visibly display a space character.

```
54 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_visible_space:
   \font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF \font {"2423}
   { \char"2423\scan_stop: }
   { \fontspec_visible_space_fallback: }
```

ntspec_visible_space:@fallback If the current font doesn't have u+2434: open box, use Latin Modern Mono instead.

```
60 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_visible_space_fallback:
61 {
62
    \usefont{\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}{\lmtt}{\f@series}{\f@shape}
    \textvisiblespace
65
   }
66 }
```

fontspec_print_visible_spaces:

Helper macro to turn spaces (^^20) active and print visible space instead.

```
67 \group_begin:
68 \char_set_catcode_active:n{"20}%
69 \cs_gset:Npn\fontspec_print_visible_spaces:{%
70 \char_set_catcode_active:n{"20}%
71 \cs_set_eq:NN^^20\fontspec_visible_space:%
72 }%
73 \group_end:
```

```
Redefine \verb to use \fontspec_print_visible_spaces:.
    \verb
   \verb*
           74 \def\verb
            75 {
                \relax\ifmmode\hbox\else\leavevmode\null\fi
           76
            77
                  \verb@eol@error \let\do\@makeother \dospecials
            78
                  \verbatim@font\@noligs
                  \@ifstar\@@sverb\@verb
            80
            81 }
            82 \def\@@sverb{\fontspec_print_visible_spaces:\@sverb}
               It's better to put small things into \AtBeginDocument, so here we go:
            83 \AtBeginDocument
            84 {
                \fontspec_patch_verbatim:
            85
                \fontspec_patch_moreverb:
            86
                \fontspec_patch_fancyvrb:
                \fontspec_patch_listings:
            88
            89 }
verbatim* With the verbatim package.
            90 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_verbatim:
                \@ifpackageloaded{verbatim}
            92
            93
                  \cs_set:cpn {verbatim*}
            94
            95
                   \group_begin: \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces: \verbatim@start
            96
                   }
            97
                 }
            98
           This is for vanilla LATEX.
            99
                  \cs_set:cpn {verbatim*}
           100
           101
                   {
                    \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces: \@sxverbatim
           102
           103
                   }
           104
                 }
           105 }
           This is for moreverb. The main listing* environment inherits this definition.
           106 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_moreverb:
           107 {
                \@ifpackageloaded{moreverb}{
           108
                  \cs_set:cpn {listingcont*}
           109
           110
                    \cs_set:Npn \verbatim@processline
           111
           112
                       \thelisting@line \global\advance\listing@line\c_one
           113
           114
                      \the\verbatim@line\par
           115
                    \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces: \verbatim@start
           116
```

```
117
        }
118 }{}
119 }
    listings and fancvrb make things nice and easy:
120 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_fancyvrb:
121 {
122
    \@ifpackageloaded{fancyvrb}
123
       \cs_set_eq:NN \FancyVerbSpace \fontspec_visible_space:
124
125
     }{}
126 }
127\cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_listings:
    \@ifpackageloaded{listings}
131
       \cs_set_eq:NN \lst@visiblespace \fontspec_visible_space:
132
     }{}
133 }
```

23.15 \oldstylenums

\liningnums command.

\oldstylenums This command obviously needs a redefinition. And we may as well provide the reverse

```
134 \RenewDocumentCommand \oldstylenums {m}
135 {
   { \addfontfeature{Numbers=OldStyle} #1 }
138 \NewDocumentCommand \liningnums {m}
141 }
142 \left</\mathsf{patches}\right>
```

Part X fontspec.cfg